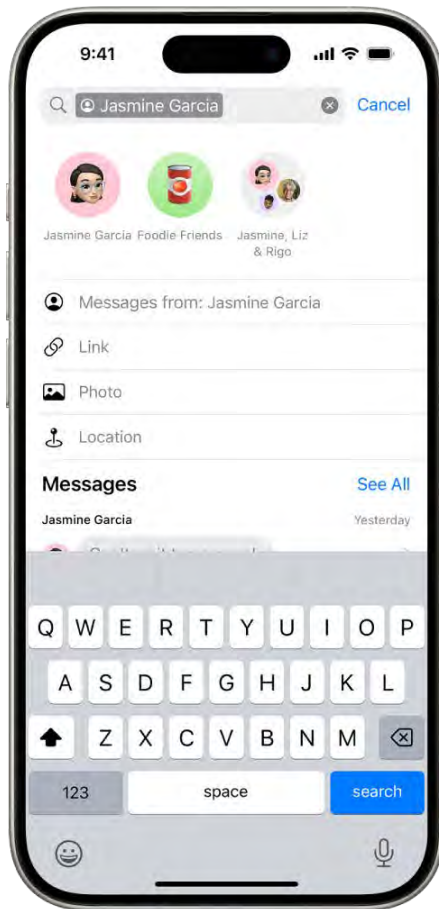




[Alt text: The search field in the Messages app. The search field contains a tag limiting the search to messages from one person. Other tags to add to the search field—Link, Photo, Location, and Document—appear as options.]

4. To combine search criteria, add another search term or filter.
5. Tap search, then tap a message in the results list to read it.

The search field also opens suggestions—such as conversations, photos, locations, links, and more. Tap any suggestion to quickly jump to a conversation.

Related

[Send and reply to messages on iPhone](#)
[Change message notifications on iPhone](#)
[Keep track of messages on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Forward and share messages](#)

Forward and share messages on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Forward text messages and attachments on iPhone.

You can forward one or more text messages in a conversation to a different recipient.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold a message bubble you want to forward, then tap More.
3. Tap to select one or more messages to forward, then tap  [Alt text: the Forward button] .
4. Enter recipients, then tap  [Alt text: the Send button] .

Tip: To show the message bubbles and timestamps just as they appear in a conversation, send a [screenshot](#) as an attached image instead of forwarding messages.

To share your messages on other devices, see [Set up iCloud for Messages on all your devices](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

Related

[Send and reply to messages on iPhone](#)

[Take and edit photos or videos in Messages on iPhone](#)

[Have a group conversation in Messages on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Group conversations](#)

Have a group conversation in Messages on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Messages on iPhone, exchange messages as a group.

You can send a group text message, name it, and assign it an image to find it more easily. In a group conversation, you can call people's attention to specific messages and even [collaborate on projects](#).



[Alt text: iPhone with a group conversation including shared files.]

Send a new message to a group

You can send a message to multiple people to start a group conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Compose button] at the top of the screen to start a new conversation.
3. Enter the phone number, contact name, or [Apple Account](#) of each recipient, or tap  [Alt text: the Add Contact button], then choose contacts.

Note: If one or more of your recipients isn't using [iMessage](#), messages appear in green bubbles instead of blue ones.

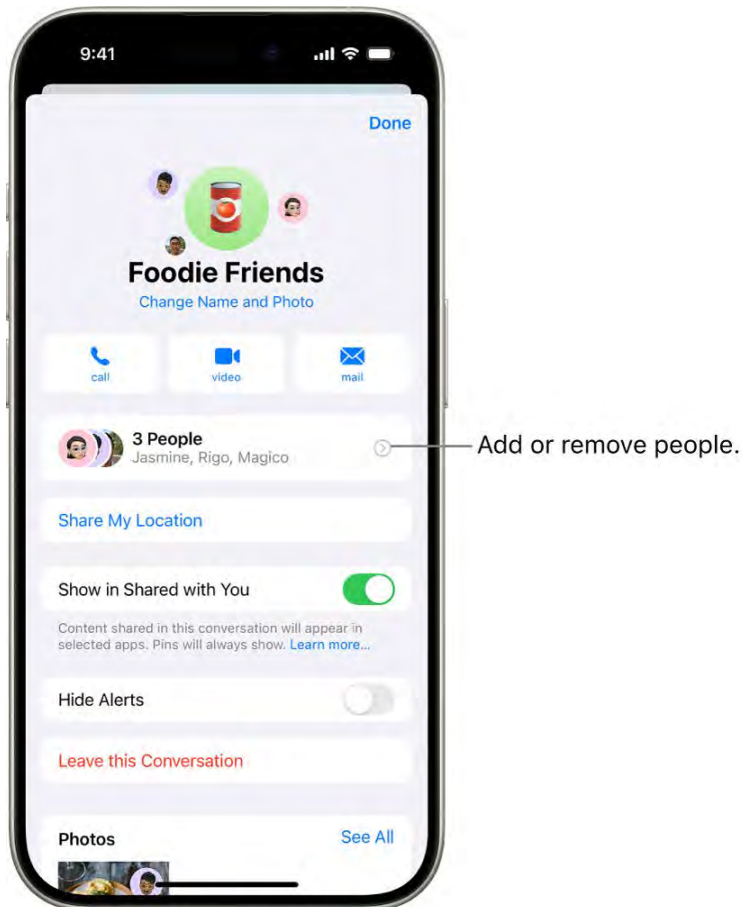
4. Tap the text field, type your message, then tap  [Alt text: the Send button].

Add someone to an existing group conversation

If you have at least two other people in a group conversation, you can add additional contacts.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap the group conversation you want to add someone to.
3. Tap the group name at the top of the conversation, then tap the button that shows how many people are in the conversation.



[Alt text: The conversation details for a group.]

4. Tap Add Contact, then enter the new recipient's phone number, contact name, or [Apple Account](#).

Or tap  [Alt text: the Add Contact button], then choose a contact from the list.

Note: If the group includes someone who hasn't [turned on iMessage](#), follow the onscreen instructions to start a new group.

If you only have one other person in the conversation, you need to start a new group conversation to add someone else.

To remove someone from a group conversation, swipe left on their name, then tap Remove.

Leave a group conversation

You can leave a group chat if there are at least three other participants in the conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the group conversation you want to leave.
3. Tap the group name at the top of the conversation.
4. Scroll down and tap Leave This Conversation or Delete and Block This Conversation. (Learn more about [deleting](#) and [blocking](#) conversations.)

Blocked conversations are moved to the Recently Deleted folder, where you can [recover](#) them.

If you want to stay in a group chat but stop receiving its notifications, [mute the conversation](#) instead.

Mention people in a group conversation

You can mention someone by name in a group conversation to call their attention to a specific message, and they'll get a notification. Depending on their settings, the person you mention may be notified even if they have the conversation muted.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, begin typing a contact's name in the text field.
3. Tap the contact's name when it appears.

You can also mention a contact in Messages by typing @ followed by the contact's name.

To change how or when you get notifications when your name is mentioned in Messages, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Messages, then turn on Notify Me.

Name a group conversation

You can name a group text message and choose an image to represent the conversation. Everyone who has [turned on iMessage](#) will see the new name and image.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the name or number at the top of the conversation.
3. Tap Change Name and Photo, then choose an option.

Related

[Apple Support article: Send a group text message](#)

[Send and reply to messages on iPhone](#)

[Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone](#)

[Share content in Messages on iPhone](#)

Share screens using Messages on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Messages on iPhone, use screen sharing to show someone else what's on your screen—or enjoy songs, movies, and more with others with SharePlay.

While using Messages on an iPhone that meets [minimum system requirements](#), you can share your screen or ask to see someone else's screen. In supported apps, you can also use SharePlay to get together with friends while you watch the latest episode of your favorite show or listen to a new song in real time.

Show someone else what's on your screen

You can jump from Messages to FaceTime to share your screen to bring apps, webpages, and more into the conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation with just one other person, tap  [Alt text: the FaceTime button] .
3. Tap Share My Screen. See [Share your screen](#).

See another person's screen

You can jump from Messages to FaceTime to see another person's screen, or even remotely control it.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation with just one other person, tap  [Alt text: the FaceTime button] .
3. Tap Ask to Share Screen. See [Request remote control](#).

Use SharePlay to enjoy content together

You can start a Messages conversation right from a supported app like Apple TV and Music.

To use SharePlay in Messages, you and your recipients must be using [iMessage](#). Shared playback controls keep everyone in sync.

1. In a supported app, find a show, movie, song, album, or other content you want to share, then tap the item to see its details.
2. Do one of the following:
 - Tap  [Alt text: the Share button] , then tap SharePlay.
 - Tap ... [Alt text: the More button] at the top right, tap  [Alt text: the Share button] , then tap SharePlay.
 - Tap ... [Alt text: the More button] next to the content, then tap SharePlay.

3. In the To field, enter the contacts you want to share with, then tap Messages.
4. Tap Start or Play to begin using SharePlay.

To begin viewing or listening, recipients tap the content's title at the top of the Messages conversation, then tap Open. For everyone who has access to the content, the video starts playing at the same time.

Note: If the shared content requires a subscription, the service may ask those who don't have access to subscribe, make a transaction, or sign up for a free trial, if available.

When you select content to share and tap the Play button, you can also select Play for Everyone (if it appears) to begin it for everyone in the conversation. (Others on the thread may have to tap Join SharePlay to see the video.)

Each person in the conversation can use the playback controls to play, pause, rewind, or fast-forward for everyone, but settings like closed-captioning and volume are controlled separately by each person.

Use Messages when you want no interruptions to the sound of the movie, show, song, or podcast, or tap  [Alt text: the FaceTime button] to switch to [FaceTime](#) when you want to see and hear other people as you chat.

Tip: After the video starts playing, you can stream it to Apple TV. See [Send what you're watching in SharePlay to Apple TV](#).

Related

- [Have a group conversation in Messages on iPhone](#)
- [Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone](#)
- [Share content in Messages on iPhone](#)
- [Customize sharing options in an iPhone app](#)

NAV TITLE: [Collaborate on projects](#)

Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Messages on iPhone, invite others to collaborate on project files.

In the Messages app  [ALT N/A], you can send a text message to invite people to collaborate on a project, and everyone in the conversation is added to the document, spreadsheet, or other shared file.

Note: To start collaborating on a project with Messages, you and your recipients must be using [iMessage](#) with iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, watchOS 9, visionOS 1, or later, and you

must first save the content somewhere it can be accessed by others, such as [iCloud Drive](#). For iPhone apps, you may need to turn on iCloud to use their collaboration features: go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > iCloud, then tap See All next to Saved to iCloud.

Invite people to collaborate

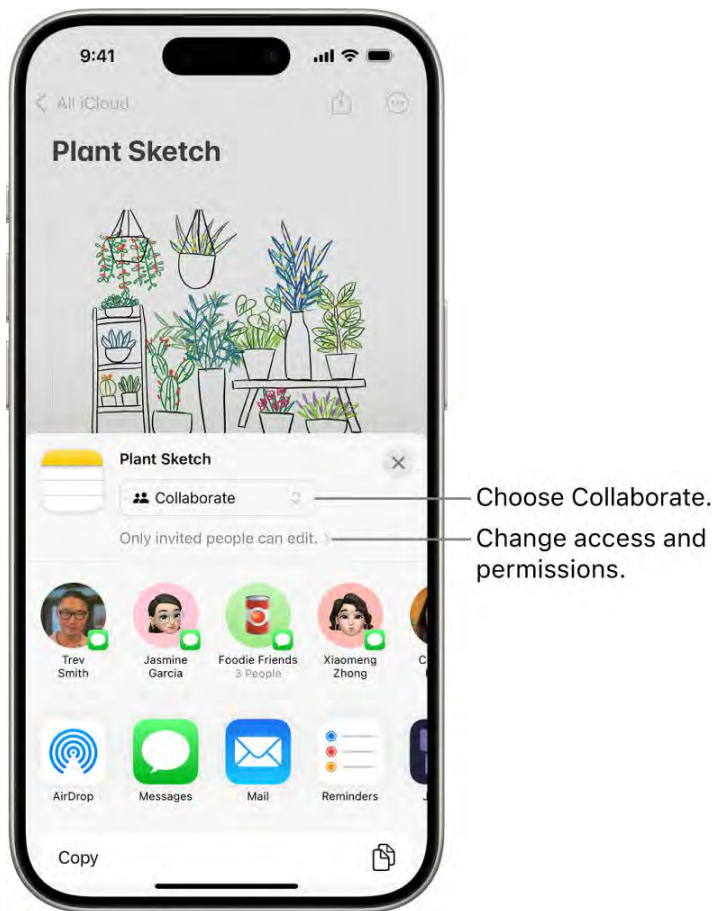
You can invite people to collaborate on a project from another app, and then discuss your content in Messages. Share files from apps like [Notes](#), [Freeform](#), [Reminders](#), [Safari](#), [Keynote](#), [Numbers](#), [Pages](#), and more, as long as you first turn on their collaboration features in iCloud settings and save the content somewhere it can be accessed by others, such as [iCloud Drive](#).

The process for inviting someone to collaborate depends on the app. Here's one way you might start a collaboration in a supported app:

1. Select the file you want to share, then tap  [ALT text: the Share button] , or tap Collaborate.
2. Make sure Collaborate (rather than Send Copy) is selected, then tap the group or individual you want to collaborate with. If you don't see the group or person listed, tap  [ALT text: the Messages app icon] .

The suggested icons may correspond with groups or individuals with active FaceTime calls or recent Messages conversations.

3. A Messages conversation opens with the invitation ready to send. Add a note (optional), then tap  [ALT text: the Send button] .



[Alt text: A collaboration invitation to a drawing in Notes, showing Collaborate for the share option and “Only people you invite can edit” as the access and permission setting. Four possible recipients, including a group, form a row below that. The bottom row offers different ways to share the note: AirDrop, Messages, Mail, and Freeform.]

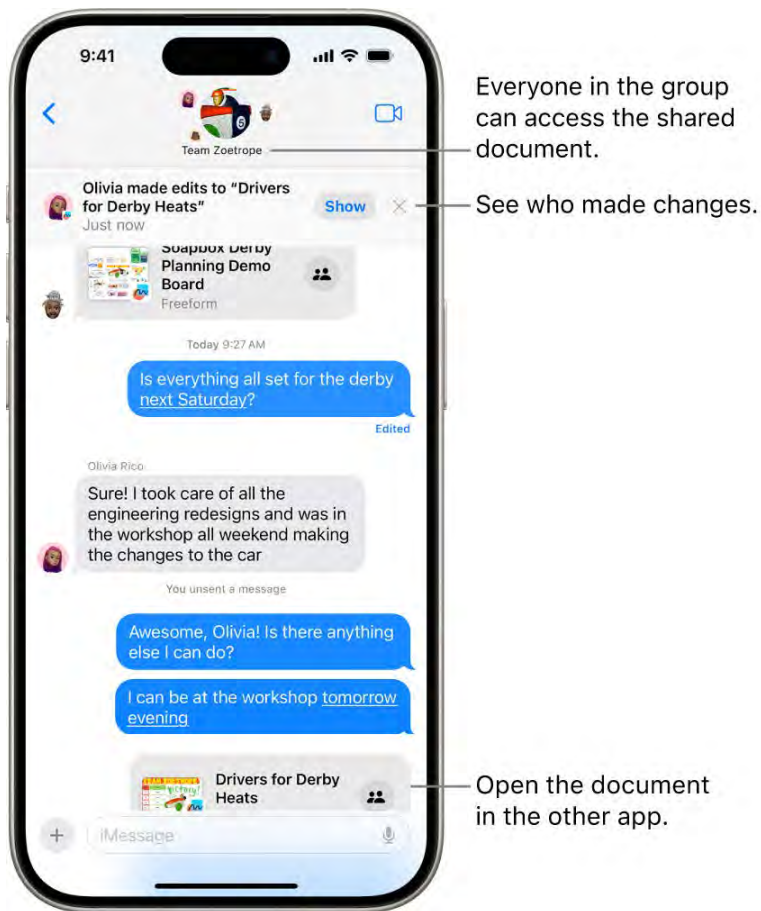
After you invite participants in Messages, you can work on the project in the other app and return to the Messages conversation by tapping the Collaborate button in that app.

When someone edits the file, you see updates at the top of the Messages thread. To return to the shared project and see changes, tap an update.

Note: Your participants may need to accept your invitation or join the shared item before they can interact with it or see any updates.

Collaborate on a project in Messages

After you share your project, you see activity updates at the top of the Messages conversation whenever someone makes an edit.



[Alt text: A group conversation in Messages including a collaboration invitation and updates at the top of the conversation window.]

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Go to the conversation that contains the invitation to the project you've started collaborating on, then do any of the following to return to the project:
 - Tap the file in your conversation to open it.
 - If you see an update at the top of the conversation, tap Show.
 - Tap the name of your participant or group at the top of the screen, scroll to Collaboration, then tap the shared project.

When you make any changes or edits to the project, your participants get updates in the conversation.

Note: If you add a new person to a group conversation, you have to grant them access to the projects you're collaborating on. If they've been added to the group conversation recently, you can tap a notification at the top of screen to add them. Or [invite them to collaborate](#).

Manage the collaboration and group

The group of people in the Messages collaboration and the group collaborating on the file may not match. For example, you may invite people to collaborate on the file outside of Messages. Or you may have two different groups in Messages, each with its own collaboration conversation.

If you share a project with two or more people in a Messages conversation, you can add or remove participants.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Go to the conversation you want to manage, then tap the group icon at the top of the conversation to open details about the group's conversation.
3. Tap the button showing the participants in the conversation, then do any of the following:
 - *Add new participants:* Scroll to the bottom of the list, tap Add Contact  [ALT N/A], then add contacts.

If you started collaborating with just one other person, you must start a new conversation to add people to the collaboration.

Note: You must add new participants to any files that were shared in the conversation before they joined. As you add participants, a notification appears at the top of the conversation. Tap Show in the notification to review the previously shared files you can add new participants to.

- *Remove participants from the conversation:* Swipe left on the name of the person you want to remove, then tap Remove.

Important: The apps where the collaboration happens usually control access to the project. Check participant access in the app itself to remove viewing or editing privileges completely.

When you add someone to a document you've shared with others earlier, you have the option of adding them to an existing conversation or keeping the conversations separate. People added to conversations aren't able to read messages sent before they joined the conversation.

Stop collaborating on a project in Messages

The apps where the collaboration happens usually control access to the project. For example, if you're collaborating on a document in the Pages app, the Pages settings take precedence over the Messages settings. You can, however, [unsend](#) or [delete](#) the invitation from the conversation just as you would any other message.

Important: When you delete an invitation from a thread, that conversation is no longer associated with the collaboration, but it doesn't remove participants from the file. Check participant access in the app to remove viewing or editing privileges completely.

Related

[Share content in Messages on iPhone](#)

[Have a group conversation in Messages on iPhone](#)

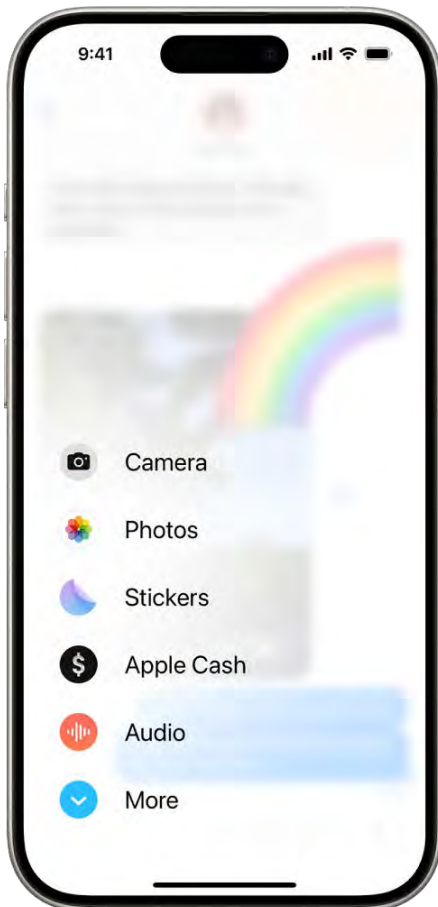
NAV TITLE: [Use iMessage apps](#)

Use iMessage apps in Messages on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Use iMessage apps on iPhone to add stickers, share a song, and more.

You can play a game, record audio messages, share songs, and more—all with iMessage apps —without leaving the Messages app. You can customize your list of available apps or add iMessage apps you find in the App Store.



[Alt text: After tapping the Apps button in a Messages conversation, a list of features to add to your message appears.]

Rearrange iMessage apps

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, then tap  [Alt text: the Apps button] .
3. Touch and hold any app icon in the list until it shrinks a little, then drag it to the location where you want it.

To move the app icon to a different page, drag it to the top or bottom edge of the screen.
You might need to wait a moment for the new page to appear.

Add iMessage apps

P9 The Messages app comes with iMessage apps you can use to send photos, videos, audio messages, payments, stickers, and more. You can download additional iMessage apps for even more options.

P10 The Messages app comes with iMessage apps you can use to send photos, videos, audio messages, stickers, and more. You can download additional iMessage apps for even more options.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, then tap  [Alt text: the Apps button] .
3. Tap Store  [ALT N/A] to open the App Store for iMessage.
4. Tap an app to see more details and reviews, then do one of the following:
 - *Purchase an app:* Tap the price. Payments are made using the method associated with your [Apple Account](#).
 - *Download a free app:* Tap Get.

Related

[About iMessage on iPhone](#)

[Set up Messages on iPhone](#)

[Share your location in Messages on iPhone](#)

[Draw and handwrite messages on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Take and edit photos or videos](#)

Take and edit photos or videos in Messages on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Messages on iPhone, take, edit, mark up, and add effects to photos or videos.

You can capture photos and videos directly in the Messages app. You can also modify the photos and videos before you send them by editing the image, marking it up, or adding effects.

Note: Your carrier may set size limits for attachments; iPhone may compress photo and video attachments when necessary.



[Alt text: Photo editing within Messages.]

Take and edit a new photo or video

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation or start a new message, tap  [Alt text: the Apps button], then tap Camera.
3. To change the camera mode, tap Slo-Mo, Video, Photo, Portrait, or Pano. (You may have to swipe left or right.)
4. To add camera effects to your photo or video—such as filters, stickers, labels, and shapes—tap  [Alt text: the Effects button], then tap a button, such as  [Alt text: the Filters button] or  [Alt text: the Memoji button]. Choose an option, then tap  [Alt text: the Close button] to add the effect to your image.

5. Do one of the following:

- *Take a photo:* Frame the shot in the viewfinder, then tap  [Alt text: the Take Picture button] .
- *Take a video:* Tap  [Alt text: the Record Video button] to begin recording and  [Alt text: the Stop Recording Video button] to stop.

6. Tap Done to add the photo or video to the message bubble, add a comment, then tap  [Alt text: the Send button] to send your message. (Or just tap  [Alt text: the Send button] to send the photo or video without adding a message.)

Note: To send SMS, MMS, or RCS attachments on [models with Dual SIM](#), you need to [set up Dual SIM](#).

You can also send a photo or video with a [Digital Touch effect](#) or [record a video message](#) in the FaceTime app.

Note: You can have your (or a family member's) iPhone receive warnings about sensitive content and warn you before it's sent or received. See [Receive warnings about sensitive content](#) or [Check for sensitive images](#).

Add and edit an existing photo

You can edit or mark up an existing image from your photo library before you send it in a Messages conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation or start a new message, tap  [Alt text: the Apps button] , then tap Photos.
3. Swipe up to search, browse through all photos, or change albums, then tap the images you want to send.
4. To alter a photo, tap the photo in the message bubble, then do any of the following:
 - Tap Markup, [write or draw with the Markup tools](#) on the photo, tap Save, then tap Done.
 - Tap Edit, [use the photo editing tools](#) to change the photo, then tap Done.
5. Add a comment (optional), then tap  [Alt text: the Send button] to send the photo.

To remove a photo or video from the message bubble before sending it, tap  [Alt text: the Remove Photo button] .

Note: Attachments you send over [iMessage](#) (such as photos or videos) may be uploaded to Apple and encrypted so that no one but the sender and receiver can access them. To improve performance, your iPhone may automatically upload attachments to Apple while you're composing a message. If you decide not to send your message, the attachments are deleted from the server after several days.

Related

[Share content in Messages on iPhone](#)
[Draw and handwrite messages on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Share photos, links, and more](#)

Share content in Messages on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Messages on iPhone, share photos, videos, links, news articles, music, podcasts, and more with others.

You can share images, links, and other content using the Messages app. When someone shares content with you, you can find it in a Shared with You section in the corresponding apps. Apps that support Shared with You include Photos, Music, News, and more.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

Share content with others

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT: N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation.
3. Do one of the following:
 - [Copy and paste](#) an image or a link into your message.
 - Tap  [Alt text: the Apps button], tap Photos to browse recent photos and videos, then tap to add.
 - Tap a message attachment, tap  [Alt text: the Share button], then tap a contact or  [Alt text: the Messages app icon].

Tip: When you tap  [Alt text: the Share button], you can also copy, save, or print your attachment.

4. Add a message (optional), then tap  [Alt text: the Send button].

From another app (like Podcasts, News, or Music), select the content you want to share, tap ... [Alt text: the More button], tap Share, then choose Messages.

Find all the content someone shared with you

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT: N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open the conversation whose content you want to see.

3. Tap the name of the person or group you're communicating with at the top of a conversation.
4. Scroll down to the Shared with You section.

Note: Content only appears in Shared with You if the person who sent it is in your [contacts](#).

P9 You can find a Shared with You section in [Photos](#), [Safari](#), [News](#), [Music](#), [Podcasts](#), and other supported apps.

P10 You can find a Shared with You section in [Photos](#), [Safari](#), [Music](#), [Podcasts](#), and other supported apps.

Review and save photos or videos

If you receive multiple photos or videos at the same time, they're automatically grouped into a collage (two to three items) or a stack (four or more).

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
 - *Look inside a stack:* Tap to open, then swipe through a stack to view, reply, or interact with each photo or video individually.
 - *Save a photo or video:* Tap  [Alt text: the Save Photo button] next to the photo or stack.

Pin shared content

If someone shares content that's especially interesting, you can quickly pin it in Messages, and it will be elevated in the Shared with You section of supported apps, in Messages search, and in the conversation details (the info you see when you tap the name at the top of the conversation).

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open the conversation with the content you want to pin.
3. Touch and hold the message bubble containing the link, then tap Pin  [ALT N/A].

Note: Photos can be saved to your library, but not pinned.

Hide shared content

You can adjust your settings to hide an app's Shared with You section.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Messages.
2. Tap Shared with You, then turn off Automatic Sharing, or turn off Shared with You for a specific app.

Note: You can have your (or a family member's) iPhone receive warnings about sensitive content and warn you before it's sent or received. See [Receive warnings about sensitive content](#) or [Check for sensitive images](#).

Related

[Take and edit photos or videos in Messages on iPhone](#)

[Share screens using Messages on iPhone](#)

[Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone](#)

[Delete messages and attachments in Messages on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Send stickers](#)

Send stickers in Messages on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Messages on iPhone, use stickers that you make or download.

Express yourself by adding stickers that match your personality and mood to your text messages.



See your recently used stickers.

Manage your Sticker Apps.

[Alt text: Stickers appear below a conversation. Each button across the top of the card opens a sticker pack.]

- COMMENT - #marcom

Send a sticker in a message

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Apps button], tap Stickers, then tap the icon for any of the following sticker packs:
 - *Live Stickers you or a friend made:* Tap  [Alt text: the Live Stickers button]. See [Create new Live Stickers](#) and [Save other people's Live Stickers](#), below.
 - *Emoji:* Tap  [Alt text: the Emoji button].
 - *Memoji:* Tap  [Alt text: the Memoji Stickers button], tap a Memoji in the top row to view the stickers in the sticker pack, then choose a pose or expression. See [Create and send Memoji in Messages on iPhone](#).
 - *Stickers from other creators:* Download a sticker app from the App Store. See [Add iMessage apps](#).
4. Add a message (optional), then tap  [Alt text: the Send button].

You can also send stickers from the emoji keyboard. See [Decorate with stickers](#).

Place stickers on a conversation

You can add stickers on message bubbles in conversations, and angle the stickers or make them different sizes. You can also place a sticker on top of another sticker.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Apps button], tap Stickers, then tap an icon—such as  [Alt text: the Live Stickers button],  [Alt text: the Emoji button], or  [Alt text: the Memoji Stickers button]—in the top row to browse a sticker pack.
4. Drag a sticker onto a bubble, then do any of the following:
 - *Adjust the angle:* Rotate a second finger around the finger dragging the sticker.
 - *Adjust the size:* Move a second finger closer to or away from the finger dragging the sticker.

Your recipients see the sticker as soon as you place it on a message.

To find out who sent a sticker in a conversation, touch and hold the sticker, then tap Sticker Details.

Tip: Quickly add stickers to messages. Touch and hold a message, tap Add Sticker, then choose a sticker to appear on a corner of that message bubble.

Move, resize, or delete stickers

After you place a sticker on top of message bubbles in conversations, you can make changes to it.

Do any of the following:

- *Move or resize a sticker:* Touch and hold the sticker, then make any changes.
- *Delete a sticker:* Touch and hold the message bubble, tap Sticker Details, swipe left on the sticker you want to delete (on your iPhone only), then tap  [Alt text: the Delete button] .
- *See any text covered by a sticker:* Double-tap the message bubble.

To change stickers sent in a message bubble, see [Unsend and edit messages](#).

Note: You and your recipients must be using iOS 17.2, iPadOS 17.2, macOS 14.1, watchOS 10.2, visionOS 1, or later, to see these updates to stickers.

Create new Live Stickers

You can create your own Live Stickers to use in messages by lifting subjects from photos and adding effects that help bring the stickers to life.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, tap  [Alt text: the Apps button] , then tap Stickers.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Live Stickers button] , tap  [Alt text: the Add button] , tap a photo, then tap Add Sticker.

Tip: To create a Live Sticker that moves, use a Live Photo. See [Make stickers from your photos](#).

4. To add an effect, touch and hold the sticker, tap Add Effect, choose an option (such as Comic or Shiny), then tap Done.

Save other people's Live Stickers

When someone sends you a Live Sticker you like, you can save it to reuse later.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation with a sticker you want to save.
3. Touch and hold the sticker, then do one of the following:
 - *For a sticker sent in a message:* Tap Save to Stickers.
 - *For a sticker placed on a message bubble:* Tap Sticker Details, then tap Save.

You can also [create and send Memoji](#) that use your voice and mirror your facial expressions.

Related

[Use iMessage apps in Messages on iPhone](#)

[Draw and handwrite messages on iPhone](#)

[Take and edit photos or videos in Messages on iPhone](#)

[Add emoji, Memoji, and stickers with the iPhone keyboard](#)

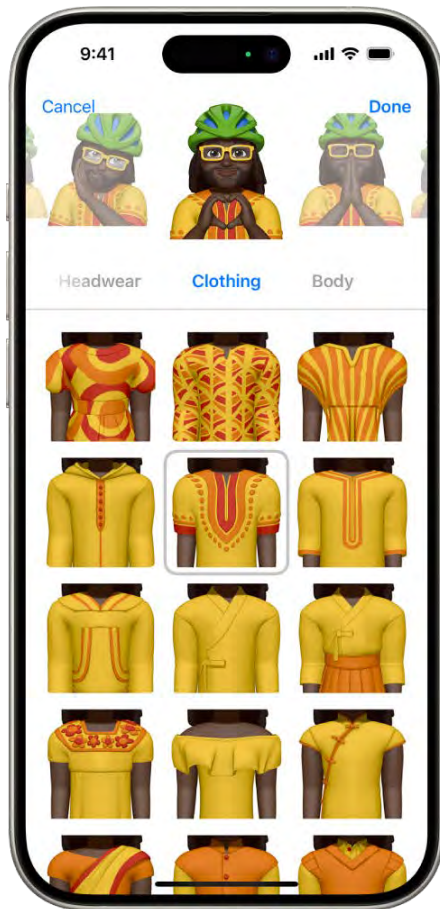
NAV TITLE: [Create and send Memoji](#)

Create and send Memoji in Messages on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Messages on iPhone, create and send Memoji.

You can design your own personalized Memoji—choose skin tone, glasses, body, and more. You can create multiple Memoji to use in different contexts. Each Memoji—even the ones you create—automatically generates a range of poses and expressions. On [supported models](#), you can send animated Memoji messages that record your voice and mirror your facial expressions.



[Alt text: The Memoji screen, showing the character being created in the middle, features to customize below the character, then below that, options for the selected feature. The Done button is at the top right and the Cancel button is at the top left.]

Create Memoji

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, tap  [Alt text: the Apps button] , tap More, then Tap Memoji.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap New Memoji or Edit.
4. Tap each feature (Skin, Hairstyle, and others to the right) and choose the options you want.
5. Tap Done to save the Memoji to your collection.

Send Memoji stickers

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, tap  [Alt text: the Apps button] , tap Stickers, then tap  [Alt text: the Memoji Stickers button] .

3. Choose a Memoji and an expression or pose, or [create a new Memoji](#).
4. Tap  [Alt text: the Send button] .

Send animated Memoji or Memoji recordings

On [supported models](#), you can send Memoji messages that record your voice and mirror your facial expressions.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, tap  [Alt text: the Apps button] , tap Memoji, then swipe and tap to choose a Memoji.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Record button] to record your facial expressions and voice, then tap  [Alt text: the Recording button] to stop.

Tap Replay to review your message.

4. Tap  [Alt text: the Send Recording button] to send your message or  [Alt text: the Discard Recording button] to cancel.

You can also [take a photo or video](#) of yourself as a Memoji, decorate it with stickers, then send it. Or you can [become a Memoji](#) in a FaceTime conversation.

Related

[Use iMessage apps in Messages on iPhone](#)

[Draw and handwrite messages on iPhone](#)

[Take and edit photos or videos in Messages on iPhone](#)

[Add emoji, Memoji, and stickers with the iPhone keyboard](#)

NAV TITLE: [React with Tapbacks](#)

React with Tapbacks in Messages on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Messages on iPhone, react to messages with Tapbacks—expressive icons like a heart or a thumbs up and any sticker, Memoji, or emoji.

Tapbacks give you a quick and easy way to respond to a message, such as a heart, a thumbs-up or thumbs-down, laughter, exclamation points, a question mark, and any sticker, Memoji, or emoji.

Note: To send and receive emoji and sticker Tapbacks, you and your recipients must be using iOS 18, iPadOS 18, macOS Sequoia, watchOS 11, visionOS 2, or later.



[Alt text: A Messages conversation with the Tapbacks menu visible.]

React with a Tapback

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT: N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation.
3. Double-tap (or touch and hold) a message.
4. Swipe left to see suggested emoji and stickers, or tap  [Alt text: the Emoji button], then tap to choose any of the following kinds of Tapbacks:
 - *Other emoji:* Tap  [Alt text: the Emoji button] (jump to other emoji categories with icons to the right of  [Alt text: the Emoji button]).
 - *Stickers:* Tap  [Alt text: the Live Stickers button].

The Tapback is attached to a specific message in a conversation, and everyone who's part of the conversation can see it.

Find out who sent a Tapback

If there's more than one Tapback for a message, they appear as a stack. You can find out who added each Tapback.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation with Tapbacks.
3. Double-tap (or touch and hold) a message with Tapbacks. Senders appear near the top of the screen.

Edit or remove your Tapback

You can only edit or remove Tapbacks you added. You can't edit or remove Tapbacks other people added.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation.
3. Tap your Tapback to open the menu, then do one of the following:
 - *Use a different Tapback:* Tap a different emoji, Memoji, or sticker. (See [React with a Tapback](#), above.)
 - *Remove the Tapback:* Tap the same Tapback you used (so it's not highlighted).

You can only add one Tapback per message. If you want to send additional stickers, see [Place stickers on a conversation](#).

Related

[Style and animate messages on iPhone](#)

[Send stickers in Messages on iPhone](#)

[Send and save GIFs in Messages on iPhone](#)

[Add emoji, Memoji, and stickers with the iPhone keyboard](#)

NAV TITLE: [Style and animate messages](#)

Style and animate messages on iPhone

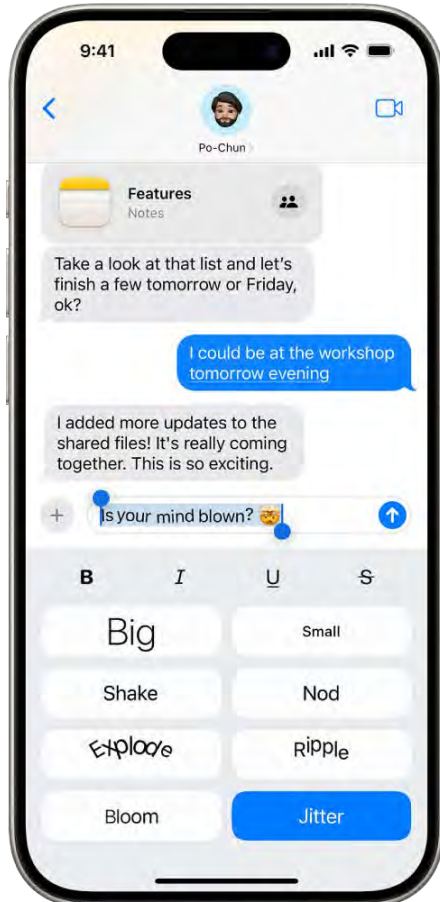
Metadata

Summary: In Messages on iPhone, style and animate text in a message with formatting and motion, bubble effects, balloons, confetti, fireworks, and more.

You can better express yourself by adding formatting, styling, or animating the text in your message, the message bubble, or the entire screen.

Note: To send and receive messages with text formatting or text effects, you and your

recipients must be using iMessage on iOS 18, iPadOS 18, macOS Sequoia, watchOS 11, visionOS 2, or later. Messages appear in plain text when sent to devices running older or other operating systems.



[Alt text: A menu of text effects opened below the text field of a Messages conversation. The highlighted text appears with a preview of the effect.]

Format or animate text within messages

Style the text in your messages with bold, italics, and underlining, or add playful, animated effects like explode or shake to any letter, word, or sentence—even emoji—in texts you send using iMessage.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT: N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In a new or existing conversation, enter a message, then select the text you want to format or animate.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Text Format button] above the keyboard, then select your preferred style (bold, italic, underline, or strikethrough) or animated effects (big, small, shake, nod, explode, ripple, bloom, jitter).

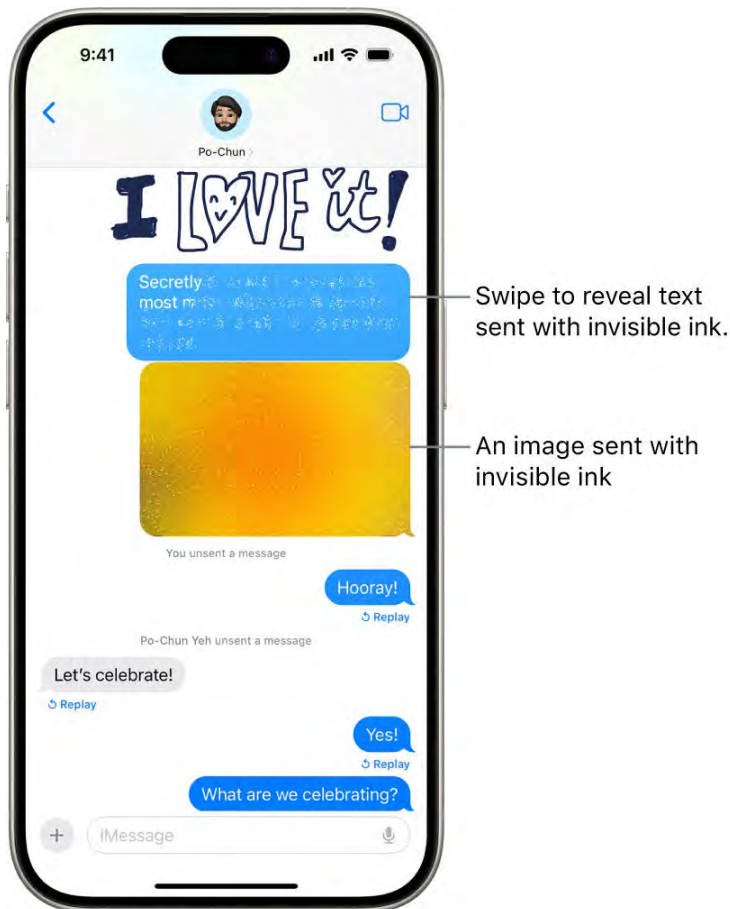
4. Tap  [Alt text: the Send button] .

You can also choose the format or animation before you enter the message.

The Messages app may suggest effects to apply as you type.

Animate the message bubble

Use effects to animate the message bubble: you can send a message with Slam or Loud so that it appears to pop out, or use Gentle so it arrives softly. You can even send a personal message with Invisible Ink that remains blurred until the recipient swipes to reveal it.

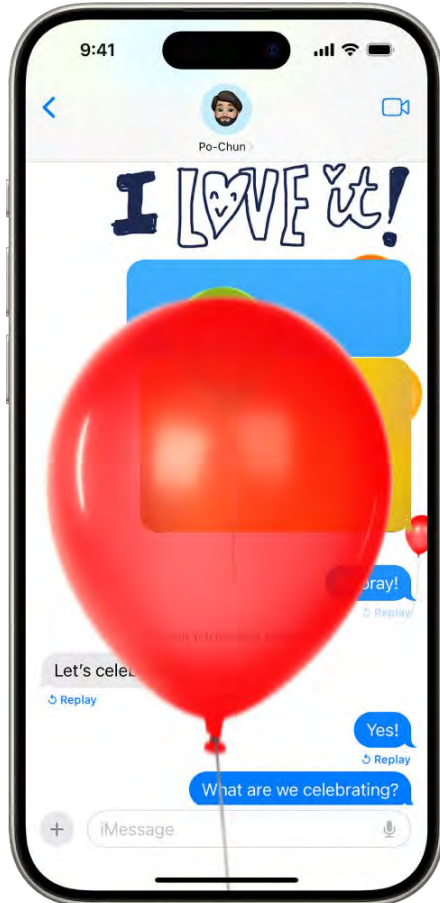


[Alt text: A message preview with the Invisible Ink effect.]

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In a new or existing conversation, type a message or insert an image or link.
3. Touch and hold  [Alt text: the Send button] , then tap the gray dots to preview different bubble effects.
4. Tap  [Alt text: the Send With Effect button] to send the message with the effect or  [Alt text: the Cancel Effect button] to cancel the effect and return to your message.

Animate effects over the full screen

You can send messages with full-screen effects—such as lively lasers, a moving spotlight, or echoing bubbles—that play when your recipient gets your message.



[Alt text: A full-screen animation of balloons, with Replay buttons below messages that were sent with full-screen animations.]

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT: N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In a new or existing conversation, type a message or insert a photo or Memoji.
3. Touch and hold  [Alt text: the Send button], then tap Screen.
4. Swipe left to preview different screen effects.
5. Tap  [Alt text: the Send With Effect button] to send the message or  [Alt text: the Close button] to cancel the effect and return to your message.

Messages automatically uses the following screen effects for specific text strings:

- Balloons for “Happy birthday”
- Confetti for “Congratulations”

- [Fireworks for “Happy New Year”](#)

Related

[Send and reply to messages on iPhone](#)

[Send stickers in Messages on iPhone](#)

[Draw and handwrite messages on iPhone](#)

[Use iMessage apps in Messages on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Draw and handwrite messages](#)

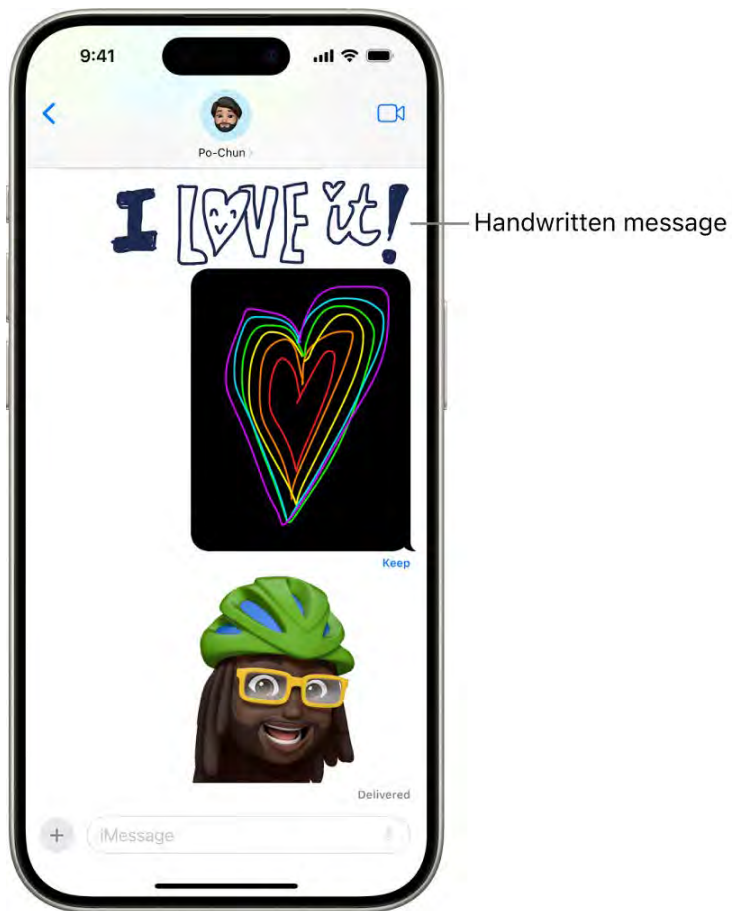
Draw and handwrite messages on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Messages on iPhone, animate a message with Digital Touch, handwriting, doodling, and more.

You can send messages with handwriting, doodling, and more.

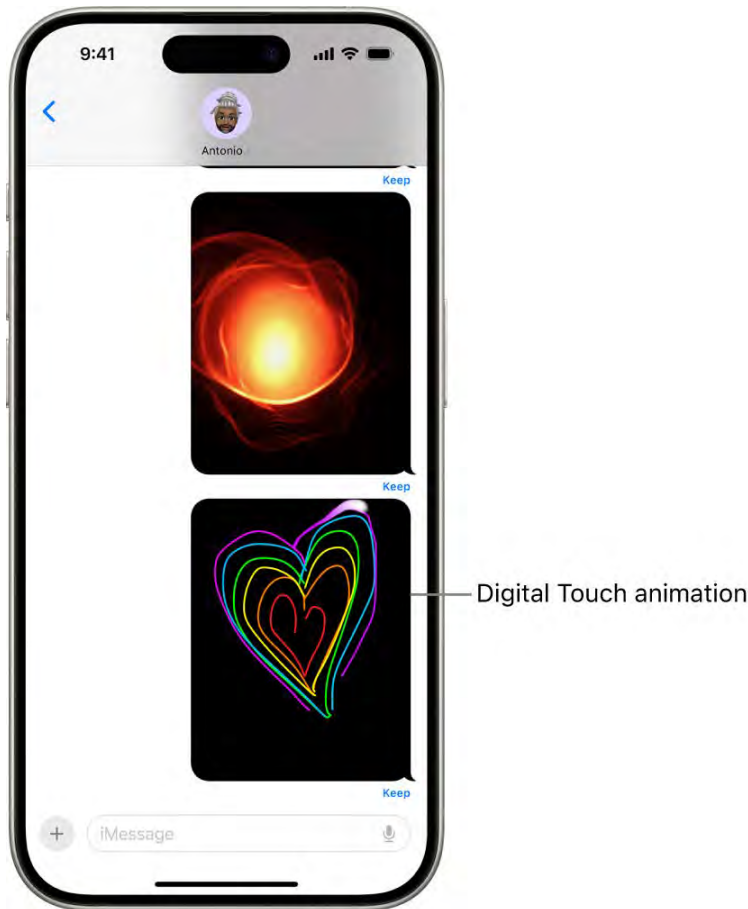
You need [iMessage](#) to exchange drawn or handwritten messages.



[Alt text: A Messages conversation with animations: a handwritten message, Digital Touch, and animated Memoji.]

Send a Digital Touch gesture, animation, or effect

With Digital Touch, you can send animated sketches, taps, kisses, heartbeats, and more, on their own or as an effect on a photo or video.



[Alt text: A Messages conversation with Digital Touch gesture and animation.]

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Apps button] , swipe up or tap More, then tap Digital Touch.
3. Do one of the following:
 - *Send an animated gesture:* Tap or touch and hold with one or two fingers. Your gesture is sent automatically when you finish it.

Touch and hold the color dot to choose a color for the one-finger taps.

Note: If you have Apple Watch or another sensor that records heartbeat data, Messages may use the recorded data when you touch and hold with two fingers to send a heartbeat.
 - *Send an animated drawing:* Draw with one finger.

You can change the color, then start drawing again.
 - *Add an effect to a new image:* Tap  [Alt text: the Camera button] , then tap  [Alt text: the Take Picture button] to take a photo or  [Alt text: the Record Video button] to record a video.

To take a new photo or video, or to erase anything you draw on your preview, tap  [Alt text: the Back to Preview button] .

4. Tap  [Alt text: the Send button] to send your drawing or image, or tap  [Alt text: the Close button] to delete it.

To send an animated doodle on a white background, see [Send a handwritten message or doodle](#).

Send a handwritten message or doodle

Use your finger to write a message or draw a doodle. Recipients see what you wrote or drew, re-created before their eyes.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, rotate iPhone to landscape orientation.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Handwriting key] on the keyboard.
4. Write a message with your finger or choose a saved message at the bottom, then tap Done.
5. Tap  [Alt text: the Send button] to send your message or  [Alt text: the Remove button] to cancel.



[Alt text: The canvas for composing a handwritten message. Along the bottom, from left to right, are saved handwritten items and the Keyboard button.]

After you create and send a handwritten message, the message is saved at the bottom of the handwriting screen. To use the saved message again, tap it. To delete the saved message, touch and hold it until the messages jiggle, then tap  [Alt text: the Delete button] .

To send a doodle on a black background, see [Send a Digital Touch gesture, animation, or effect.](#)

Related

[Send and reply to messages on iPhone](#)

[Send stickers in Messages on iPhone](#)

[Take and edit photos or videos in Messages on iPhone](#)

[Use iMessage apps in Messages on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Send and save GIFs](#)

Send and save GIFs in Messages on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Use #images to send a variety of expressive images and GIFs in Messages on iPhone.

You can search #images to find hundreds of trending GIFs you can add to your text messages and save GIFs others send to you (not available in all countries or regions).

Add a GIF from #images

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Compose button] at the top of the screen and add a recipient, or select an existing conversation.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Apps button], tap More, then tap #images.
4. To search for a specific GIF, tap “Find images,” enter a keyword (like “birthday”), then tap Search.
5. Tap a GIF to add it to your message, then tap  [Alt text: the Send button] .

Note: GIFs from #images animate only in the Messages app on Apple devices.

Save a GIF

You can save a GIF that you receive in a message to use again later.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open the conversation that includes the GIF that you want to save.
3. Touch and hold the GIF, then tap Save.

The GIF is saved to the Photos app.

Related

[Take and edit photos or videos in Messages on iPhone](#)

[Send stickers in Messages on iPhone](#)

[Draw and handwrite messages on iPhone](#)

[Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPhone](#)

P9 NAV TITLE: [Request, send, and receive payments](#)

Request, send, and receive payments in Messages on iPhone (U.S. only)

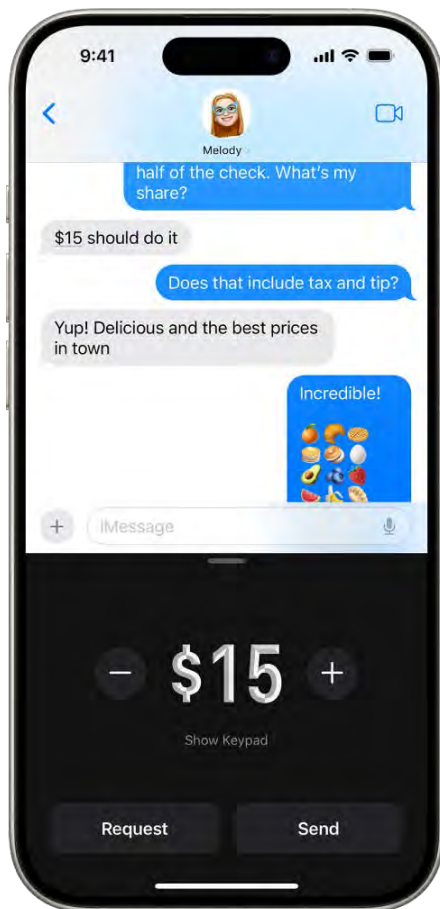
Metadata

Summary: In Messages on iPhone, use Apple Cash to request, send, and receive money quickly and easily.

You can use Apple Cash to request, send, and receive money quickly and easily using text messages.

When you receive money in Messages, it's added to your Apple Cash card in the Wallet app. See the Apple Support article [Send and receive money with Apple Cash](#).

To request, send, or receive payments in Messages, both the sender and the recipient must be using [iMessage](#).



[Alt text: An iMessage conversation with Apple Pay open at the bottom.]

Request or send a payment in Messages

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In an iMessage conversation, do one of the following:
 - Tap  [Alt text: the Apps button], tap Apple Cash, then adjust the value, as needed.
 - If the requested amount is mentioned in a sent message, tap it, then tap Send with Apple Cash.
3. Tap Request or Send for a one-time payment.

If you want to start paying someone regularly, tap Show Keypad, tap Send Recurring Payment, then follow the onscreen instructions.
4. Tap  [Alt text: the Send button], then follow the onscreen instructions.

Receive a payment

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Open a conversation where you've received a payment.

3. Tap **Accept**, then follow the onscreen instructions.

In the U.S., Apple Pay is a service provided by Apple Payments Services LLC, a subsidiary of Apple Inc. In other countries and regions, Apple Pay is a service provided by certain Apple affiliates, as designated by the [Apple Pay privacy notice](#). Neither Apple Inc. nor Apple Payments Services LLC nor Apple affiliates are a bank. Any card used in Apple Pay is offered by the card issuer. Apple Cash and sending and receiving payments through Apple Pay are services provided by Green Dot Bank, member FDIC.

Related

[Use iMessage apps in Messages on iPhone](#)

[Send and receive payments with Apple Cash in Messages](#)

NAV TITLE: [Send and receive audio messages](#)

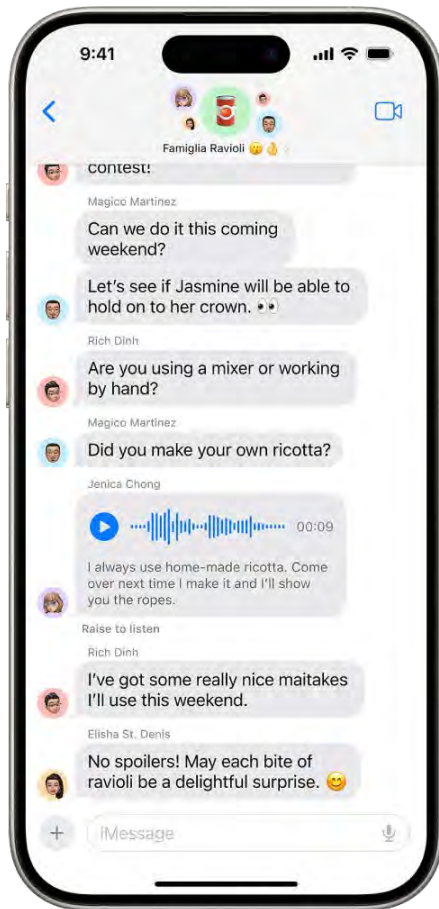
Send and receive audio messages in Messages on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Send a recorded audio message in Messages on iPhone.

You can record and send audio messages, along with transcripts of what's said in the message. Audio messages are automatically deleted to save space on your iPhone, but if you want to save them, you can.

Note: Audio message transcription available in select languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).



[Alt text: A Messages conversation with an audio message and its transcript.]

Record and send an audio message

Instead of writing a text message, you can record an audio message that can be played right in the Messages conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, tap  [Alt text: the Apps button], then tap Audio.
3. Begin speaking, tap  [Alt text: the Stop button] to pause or end your recording, then do any of the following to your message:
 - *Send it:* Tap  [Alt text: the Send button].
 - *Listen to review it:* Tap  [Alt text: the Play button].
 - *Add to the end of it:* Tap  [Alt text: the Continue Recording button] (with the message duration).
 - *Cancel it:* Tap  [Alt text: the Close button].
4. Tap Keep to save an incoming or outgoing audio message on your iPhone.

Otherwise, the recording is deleted from the conversation—on your iPhone only—2 minutes after you send or listen to it. Recipients can play your recording any time after they receive it. To save it, they need to tap Keep within 2 minutes after listening to it.

Tip: Send follow-up audio messages more quickly by tapping  [Alt text: the Record Audio button] in the text field above the keyboard.

Audio messages are automatically transcribed in the language chosen in the sender's Settings. See [Change the language and region](#) to switch to another language for your outgoing messages.

Always keep audio messages

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Messages.
2. Tap Expire (below Audio Messages), then tap Never.

Listen or reply to a recorded audio message

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation with an audio message, then tap  [Alt text: the Play button] to play it.
3. Do any of the following:
 - Slide right and left on the audio message to fast-forward or rewind.
 - Touch and hold  [Alt text: the Play button] or  [Alt text: the Pause button] to adjust the playback speed.
4. Tap Keep to save an audio message in the Messages conversation.

To save the message in the Voice Memos app  [ALT N/A], touch and hold the audio message, then tap Save to Voice Memos.

Use Raise to Listen

When you receive an audio message, you can move your iPhone to play and reply to the message. Do either of the following:

- *Play an audio message:* Raise your iPhone to your ear.
- *Reply to an audio message:* Lower your iPhone and raise it to your ear again, then speak after you hear a tone. Tap  [Alt text: the Send button] to send your reply.

Turn off Raise to Listen

If you don't want audio messages to play when you raise your iPhone to your ear, you can turn the feature off.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Messages.
2. Turn off Raise to Listen.

Switch to FaceTime from Messages

You can quickly make an audio or video call instead of sending a message by switching to FaceTime. In a Messages conversation, tap  [Alt text: the FaceTime button] .

Related

[Make a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone](#)

[Change your voicemail greeting and settings on iPhone](#)

[Make FaceTime calls on iPhone](#)

[Dictate text on iPhone](#)

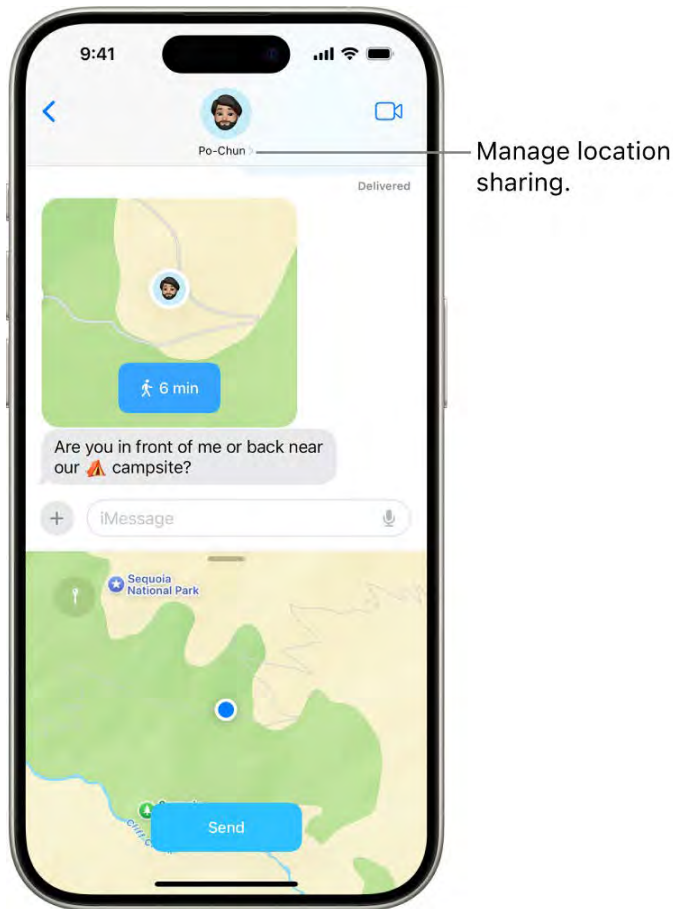
NAV TITLE: [Share your location](#)

Share your location in Messages on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Messages on iPhone, use location sharing to share where you are or see where your contact is.

You can let others know where you are (or find out where they are) by using location sharing.



[Alt text: A Messages conversation with a shared location.]

- COMMENT - #ba #locations #marcom

Share and update your location automatically

When you share your location in a Messages conversation, it updates in real time right in the conversation. You can share your location by tapping Current Location (above the keyboard) when somebody asks where you are, or do the following:

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, then do one of the following:
 - Tap  [Alt text: the Apps button], tap Location, then tap Send.
 - Tap the name of the person you want to share your location with at the top of the conversation, then tap Share My Location.
3. Decide how long you want to share your location.

Tap Indefinitely if you want to share your location until you manually stop sharing it.

4. Tap  [Alt text: the Send button] to send your location. (Or tap  [Alt text: the Remove App from Message button] if you change your mind.)

You can also use Messages to check in with someone—for example, to notify a family member or friend that you’ve made it to your destination safely. See [Use Check In to let your friends know you’ve arrived](#).

When you share your location in a group conversation and then add other people to the group, you can reshare your location to let everyone see where you are.

When you want to share your location in an SMS conversation, [send a pinned location](#) instead.

Stop sharing your location

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation, then do one of the following:
 - Tap the message with your shared location, then tap Stop Sharing My Location.
 - Tap the name of the person you’re sharing your location with at the top of the conversation, then tap Stop Sharing or Stop Sharing My Location.

The previous bubbles in the conversation no longer display a map.

Ask for someone else’s location

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation with one other person, then do one of the following:
 - Tap  [Alt text: the Apps button], tap Location, then tap Request.
 - Send a message that ends with the question, “Where are you?” then tap Request Location (above the keyboard).
 - Tap the name of the person whose location you want at the top of the conversation, then tap Request Location.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Send button] to send your request.

After someone shares their location with you, their location appears below their name at the top of the conversation. Tap their name to see where they are on a map. Tap the map to enlarge it.

Note: Location sharing and finding people aren’t available in all countries or regions. If you set up location sharing and others still can’t see your location, make sure you’ve allowed access. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Find My, then choose an option. See [Control the location information you share](#).

Send a pinned location

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, tap  [Alt text: the Apps button] , then tap Location.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Map Pin button] , then drag the map until the pin is in the right place.
4. Tap Send Pin, then tap  [Alt text: the Send button] to send your pin.

Messages uses the Find My app when you share your location. Learn how to [share your location](#) and [locate someone](#).

Related

[Use iMessage apps in Messages on iPhone](#)

[Use Check In on iPhone to let your friends know you've arrived](#)

[Share your location with a friend](#)

[Apple Support article: Find people and share your location with Find My](#)

NAV TITLE: [Turn read receipts on or off](#)

Turn read receipts on or off in Messages on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Messages on iPhone, turn on read receipts so that people you're texting know when you've read their messages, or turn off read receipts when you don't want them to know you've opened them.

You can use read receipts to automatically let someone know when you've seen their text messages.

When read receipts are turned on, the sender sees the word "Read" below messages they've sent to you, indicating that you've read their message. If you haven't read their message, the sender sees "Delivered."

You can turn on read receipts for everyone or for individual contacts.

Note: To use read receipts, you and your recipient must turn on [iMessage](#).

Turn on read receipts

You can turn on read receipts to let everyone know when you've opened their messages.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Messages.
2. Turn on Send Read Receipts.

Note: If you turned off read receipts for a particular contact, you have to turn the setting back on for that one contact individually. (See [Turn on read receipts for one person](#), below.)

Turn off read receipts

If you don't want others to know that you've opened their messages, you can turn off read receipts.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Messages.
2. Turn off Send Read Receipts.

Note: This action affects only those conversations with contacts whose read receipts you never turned on individually. (See [Turn off read receipts for one person](#), below.)

Turn on read receipts for one person

You can turn on read receipts in a conversation to let that one recipient know when you've seen their incoming messages, even if you turned off read receipts generally.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a conversation, then tap the number or name of the person you're communicating with at the top of the conversation.
3. Turn on Send Read Receipts.

Turn off read receipts for one person

If you turned on read receipts for an individual, but you want them to stop getting read receipts, you can turn the setting off for that one contact.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a conversation, then tap the number or name of the person you're communicating with at the top of the conversation.
3. Turn off Send Read Receipts.

Get read receipts when someone else sees your messages

You can't turn on read receipts for anyone but yourself. To receive read receipts when your messages are opened, ask the recipient to turn them on. See [Turn on read receipts for one person](#), above.

Related

[Send and reply to messages on iPhone](#)

[Keep track of messages on iPhone](#)

[Use Check In on iPhone to let your friends know you've arrived](#)

[Manage information sharing with Safety Check on iPhone](#)

Change message notifications on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, set up and manage message notifications.

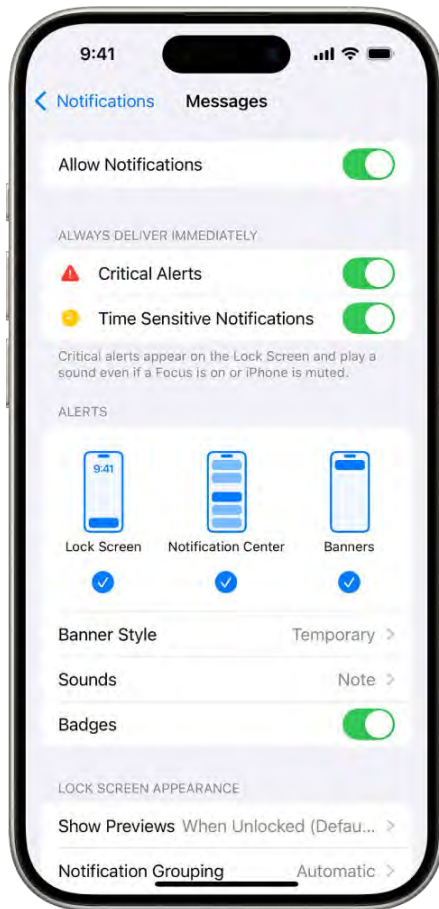
You can change whether or not you're notified about text messages you receive, and how the notifications appear or sound. For example, you can turn off message notifications so you aren't distracted by notification sounds when you're in class or other quiet settings, or assign a special sound for certain contacts so you know when you get a message from them.

Pause all notifications

You can temporarily stop notifications for all apps by turning on Do Not Disturb (or another [Focus](#)) or a [sleep schedule](#). Your status appears in the Messages app to let people know you're not receiving messages.

1. [Open Control Center](#) on your iPhone.
2. Tap Focus, then tap Do Not Disturb.

Note: If you want to allow urgent messages to get through, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Notifications > Messages, then turn on Time Sensitive Notifications.



[Alt text: iPhone with Messages settings for notifications and alerts.]

Stop all notifications

You can stop getting notified about activity in the Messages app while continuing to receive messages. When you're ready to read them, you can open Messages to see the texts you missed while notifications were off, and [catch up on messages you missed](#).

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Notifications > Messages.

2. Turn off Allow Notifications.

When you want to get notified again, turn on Allow Notifications. If you also want to hear them, make sure the Ring/Silent switch isn't in [Silent mode](#) and your [volume](#) is audible.

You can also stop notifications from other Apple apps and third-party apps. See [Change notification settings](#).

Mute sounds or vibrations for sent and received messages

When you send a message, a swoosh sound plays by default. When you receive a message, a tone plays. If you don't want to hear these sounds, you can set your text tone to None.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Notifications > Messages.

2. Do either of the following:

- *Mute sounds:* Tap Sounds, then tap None.
- *Turn off vibrations:* Tap Sounds, tap Haptics (near the top), then tap None.

You can also put the Ring/Silent switch in [Silent mode](#).

Note: The None and the Ring/Silent switch setting affect both incoming and outgoing sounds. (You can't mute only one.)

See also [Flash the indicator light for notifications](#).

Change the sound and vibration for notifications

You can choose the sound volume for alerts, choose between a tone or sound for alerts, or change the notification vibration pattern (when the phone is silenced).

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Sounds & Haptics.

2. Do any of the following:

- *Make notifications quieter or louder:* Adjust the volume with the slider.
- *Choose a tone or sound:* Tap Text Tone, then tap a sound below Alert Tones (or tap Tone Store to download one).
- *Choose a vibration pattern:* Tap Text Tone, tap Haptics, then choose an option (or tap Create New Vibration to make your own).

Tip: The tone and vibration you choose apply to both the Messages app and other apps that have notifications on, such as Mail, Phone, and other Apple or third-party apps. To change them just for the Messages app, go to Settings > Notifications > Messages, then tap Sounds.

You can set how many times to repeat a notification (from Never to 10 Times) in Settings > Notifications > Messages > Customize Notifications > Repeat Alerts.

Change the notification sound for certain people

You can choose a specific sound or vibration pattern to play when you get a message from a specific contact.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap a conversation, then tap the number or name of the person you're communicating with at the top of the conversation.

3. Tap Info  [ALT N/A], tap Edit in the top-right corner, then tap Text Tone.

If you don't see Edit, tap Create New Contact or Add to Existing Contact.

4. Do any of the following:

- *Specify a tone or sound:* Tap a sound below Alert Tones (or tap Tone Store to download one).
- *Specify a vibration pattern:* Tap Haptics, then choose an option (or tap Create New Vibration to make your own).
- *Mute notifications for this conversation:* Tap None below both Haptics and Alert Tones.

To give this contact the option to override a Focus, so any important messages can get through, turn on Emergency Bypass. You might turn it on for a family member, caretaker, or colleague, for example.

Mute one conversation

You can stop getting notifications for a conversation while you continue to receive its messages.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In the Messages list, do one of the following:
 - Swipe left on a conversation, then tap  [Alt text: the Mute button] .
 - Touch and hold a conversation, then tap Hide Alerts.

To completely stop getting messages for one conversation, you can [block a specific person or number](#) or [leave a group conversation](#).

Announce messages

Siri can [announce messages](#) on your iPhone speaker, supported headphones, and when using CarPlay.

To hear incoming messages on MFi hearing devices, see [Announce calls and notifications for specific apps](#).

To let people know you've read their messages, see [Turn on read receipts](#).

Related

[Change notification settings on iPhone](#)

[Schedule a Focus to turn on or off](#)

[Change iPhone sounds and vibrations](#)

[Schedule a notification summary](#)

NAV TITLE: [Block, filter, and report messages](#)

Block, filter, and report messages on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Messages on iPhone, block unwanted messages, filter messages from unknown senders, and report junk or spam messages.

You can reduce the number of unwanted text messages you receive when you block individuals, filter unknown senders, and report spam or junk messages.

Note: A known sender is anyone you've added to the Contacts app or sent a message to.

Block messages from a specific person or phone number

When you block a specific contact or phone number, messages from that person or number aren't delivered. (The person sending the message doesn't know that their message was blocked.)

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In a Messages conversation, tap the name or number at the top of the conversation.
3. Tap Info  [ALT N/A], scroll down, then tap Block this Caller.

Tip: Instead of blocking all the senders in a group conversation, you can simply [leave it](#) or [stop its notifications](#).

If you're still having trouble with unwanted messages, see the Apple Support article [Block phone numbers, contacts, and emails on your iPhone or iPad](#).

P9

Filter messages from unknown senders

With iMessage, you can prevent unknown senders from texting you directly. Their messages are filtered to another folder, and you don't get notified about them.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Messages.
2. Scroll down to Message Filtering, then turn on Filter Unknown Senders.

If this setting is on and you're missing a message, check to see if it was filtered to Unknown Senders. Tap Filters in the top-left corner of the conversation list, then tap Unknown Senders.

Note: You can't open any links sent by an unknown sender until you make them a known sender—by adding them to your contacts or replying to the message.

P10

Organize and filter messages from unknown senders and spam (China only)

- COMMENT - #zhcn - China only

Messages can organize your messages in the following categories:

- *Known Senders:* Messages with your contacts and people you've sent messages to.

- *Unknown Senders:* Messages from people who aren't in your contacts; you don't get notifications for these messages.

If you installed a third-party SMS spam extension, you can also filter SMS messages as Transactions, Promotions, and Junk.

To set up and use message filters, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Messages.
2. Tap Unknown & Spam, then turn on any of the following:
 - *Filter Unknown Senders:* This setting is turned on by default.
 - *SMS Spam Filter:* This setting is available only if you installed an SMS spam extension.
3. To use the filters, tap  [Alt text: the Back button] in the Messages conversation list, then tap a filter.

P10

Review and restore messages in your Junk inbox (China only)

- COMMENT - #zhcn - China only

iMessage messages that have been identified as junk are moved to your Junk inbox. If you're missing a message, check to see if it was delivered to your Junk inbox.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Messages.
2. Tap Junk.
3. To move a conversation out of the Junk inbox, tap the conversation, tap Restore iMessage, then tap Restore.

The conversation moves to Messages, where you can send a reply.

Report spam or junk messages

When you use iMessage, you can report spam or junk messages to Apple, which then receives information with the report, including the sender's information and message. Depending on your carrier and country or region, reporting spam you receive with SMS, MMS, or RCS shares this information with your carrier and its affiliates.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
 - *If you haven't opened the message:* Swipe left on the message, tap  [Alt text: the Delete button], then tap Delete and Report Junk.
 - *If you've already opened the message:* A Report Junk link appears at the bottom of any message from any unknown sender. Tap Report Junk, then tap Delete and Report Junk.

Note: You can't report a message after you've replied to it.

- *If you don't see the option to report spam or junk messages you receive with SMS or MMS:* Contact your carrier. See the Apple Support article [Wireless carrier support and features for iPhone](#).

If you received the message with iMessage, it's sent to Apple with the sender's information, and the message is permanently deleted from your iPhone.

If you accidentally report and delete messages, you can [recover](#) them.

Reporting junk or spam doesn't *prevent* the sender from sending messages, but you can [block the number](#) to stop receiving them.

P9 To decrease incoming spam or junk messages from new numbers, you can filter them. See [Filter messages from unknown senders](#), above.

Manage your list of blocked contacts

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Messages.
2. Tap Blocked Contacts, then do any of the following:
 - *Unblock a number you've blocked:* Swipe left on a number in the list, then tap Unblock. Or tap Edit, then tap  [Alt text: the Remove button] .
 - *Add additional contacts or numbers directly to the list:* Scroll down, then tap Add New.

Turn off business alerts

Some businesses send alerts and updates on your orders and other transactions if you've chosen to receive them—for example, “We've received your order” or “Order Shipped.” You can turn these off.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Messages.
2. To turn off Apple Messages for Business, tap Business Messages, then turn Business Updates off.

You can also report a message as junk when you receive it. Tap Report Junk in the conversation, then tap Delete and Report Junk. Tap the sender at the top of the conversation, and turn on Hide Alerts.

See [Apple Messages for Business & Privacy](#).

To learn about other ways you can report and prevent unwanted messages, see the Apple Support article [Recognize and avoid phishing messages, phony support calls, and other scams](#).

Related

[Keep track of messages on iPhone](#)

[Change message notifications on iPhone](#)

[Delete messages and attachments in Messages on iPhone](#)

Delete messages and attachments in Messages on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Messages on iPhone, delete messages, attachments, and entire conversations.

You can delete text messages, attachments, and entire conversations from your iPhone anytime, without affecting what your recipients see.

Tip: Use [Undo send](#) to retract (within 2 minutes) a message you sent accidentally, deleting it from both your phone *and* your recipient's phone.

Deleted messages and attachments remain in your Recently Deleted folder for up to 30 days, and you can [recover](#) them.

Delete messages and attachments

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation, touch and hold a message bubble or attachment, then tap More.
3. Select the messages or attachments you want to delete, then tap  [Alt text: the Delete button] .



[Alt text: A Messages conversation with several messages selected to be deleted.]

You can also [delete a conversation](#) entirely.

Delete multiple attachments of the same type

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the name of the person or group you're communicating with at the top of a conversation.
3. Scroll down to a category, such as Photos, then tap See All.
4. Tap Select, tap each item you want to delete, then tap Delete.

Delete a conversation

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In the Messages conversation list, do one of the following:
 - Swipe left on the conversation, then tap  [Alt text: the Delete button] .
 - Touch and hold the conversation, then tap Delete.

Delete multiple conversations

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In the Messages conversation list, do one of the following:
 - Tap Edit in the top-left corner.
 - Tap  [ALT text: the More button] in the top-right corner.
3. Tap Select Messages, choose the conversations you want to delete, then tap Delete.

Permanently remove recently deleted messages and attachments

Deleted messages and attachments remain in the Recently Deleted folder for 30 days, but you can permanently remove them before that.

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In the Messages conversation list, do one of the following:
 - Tap Edit in the top-left corner, then tap Show Recently Deleted.
 - Tap Filters in the top-left corner, then tap Recently Deleted.

If you're in a conversation, tap  [ALT text: the Back button] to return to the conversation list.
3. Select the conversations whose messages you want to delete permanently, tap Delete, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Automatically delete old messages

You can delete messages and attachments that are older than 30 days or a year old, on an ongoing basis.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Messages.
2. Scroll down, tap Keep Messages (below Message History), then choose an option.

Important: If you choose an option other than Forever, your conversations (including all attachments) are automatically removed after the specified time period elapses.

If you use [Messages in iCloud](#), deleting a message or conversation on your iPhone deletes it from all your devices where Messages in iCloud is on. See [Keep your messages up to date with iCloud](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

Note: Deleting messages only affects your iPhone and other Apple devices where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#). You can't delete messages, attachments, and conversations for anyone else.

To delete everything (not just your messages), see [Erase iPhone](#).

Related

[Unsend and edit messages on iPhone](#)

[Block, filter, and report messages on iPhone](#)
[Automatically delete one-time verification codes](#)
[Apple Support article: Delete texts and attachments in Messages](#)

NAV TITLE: [Recover deleted messages](#)

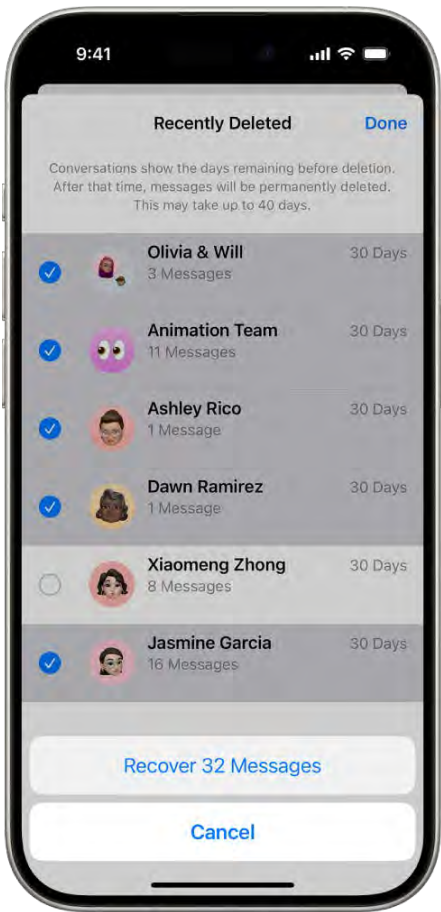
Recover deleted messages in Messages on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Messages on iPhone, recover deleted text messages and entire conversations.

You can recover deleted text messages you deleted on your iPhone.

You can restore messages you deleted for up to 30 days.



[Alt text: Recovering all messages deleted within one conversation.]

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In the Messages conversation list, do one of the following:
 - Tap Edit in the top-left corner, then tap Show Recently Deleted.
 - Tap Filters in the top-left corner, then tap Recently Deleted.

If you're in a conversation, tap  [ALT text: the Back button] to return to the conversation list.

3. Select the conversations whose messages you want to restore, then tap Recover.
4. Tap Recover Messages.

If you use [Messages in iCloud](#), recovering a message or conversation on your iPhone recovers it on all your devices where Messages in iCloud is on. See [Keep your messages up to date with iCloud](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

Deleting and recovering messages changes only your own Messages conversations where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#), not those of your recipients.

Once you recover a blocked conversation whose participants haven't all [turned on iMessage](#), incoming messages will no longer be automatically deleted.

Note: Any message that you delete from a conversation using [Undo Send](#) is permanently deleted. Audio messages that expire before being saved aren't recoverable. See [Send and receive audio messages](#).

Related

[Delete messages and attachments in Messages on iPhone](#)

[Block, filter, and report messages on iPhone](#)

[Automatically delete one-time verification codes](#)

[Apple Support article: Recover deleted text messages on your iPhone or iPad](#)

Music

NAV TITLE: [Get music](#)

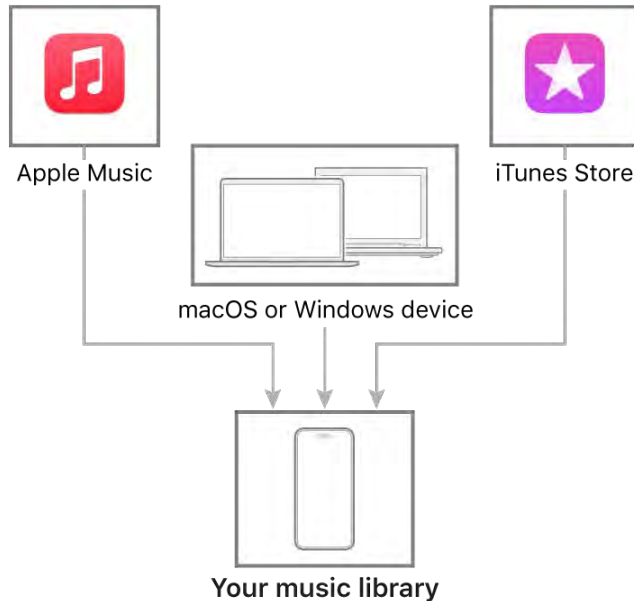
Get music on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: To get music on iPhone and build your music library, subscribe to Apple Music,

sync music from your computer, and more.

Enjoy music stored on iPhone as well as music streamed over the internet. You can build a music library—your collection of songs and albums—in many ways.



[ALT N/A]

Subscribe to Apple Music

When you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can start listening to millions of songs from the Apple Music catalog right away. To access your music library on all your devices, turn on Sync Library (go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Music). Then, [add and download songs](#) so that you can play your favorites any time, even when you're offline.

Tip: Purchase an Apple Music family subscription, and everyone in your Family Sharing group can [share an Apple Music subscription](#).

Buy music from the iTunes Store

If you don't subscribe to Apple Music and you want to add your favorite songs or albums, you can [buy and download music](#) from the iTunes Store. And, if you previously purchased items from the iTunes Store, you can [download them](#) to your authorized computers and devices (up to 10 total).

Transfer music from your Mac or Windows device

Connect your Mac or Windows device to transfer and update music between your iPhone and your device. To [sync supported content](#), use Music (macOS 10.15 or later) or iTunes (macOS 10.14 or earlier and Windows devices).

Note: Services and features aren't available in all countries or regions, and features may vary by region. Additional charges may apply when using a cellular connection.

Related

[Play music on iPhone](#)

[Intro to playlists in Music on iPhone](#)

Apple Music

NAV TITLE: [Subscribe to Apple Music](#)

Subscribe to Apple Music on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Subscribe to Apple Music on iPhone to play millions of songs, your music library, and more.

Apple Music is an ad-free streaming music service that lets you play millions of songs and your music library. As a subscriber, you can listen any time—online or off—and create your own playlists, stream and download lossless and Dolby Atmos music, get personalized recommendations, follow artists, see music your friends are listening to, watch exclusive video content, and more.

You can subscribe to Apple Music or to Apple One, which includes Apple Music and other services. See the Apple Support article [Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One](#).

Note: Apple Music, Apple One, lossless, and Dolby Atmos aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Subscribe to Apple Music

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions to subscribe to Apple Music.

If you don't subscribe to Apple Music when you first open the Music app, you can subscribe later—go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Music, then tap Join Apple Music.

New subscribers can start a trial and cancel at any time. If you end your Apple Music subscription, you can no longer stream Apple Music songs or play Apple Music songs you downloaded.

Qualified students can purchase a student subscription at a discounted price. See the Apple Support article [Get an Apple Music student subscription](#).

Share Apple Music with family members

When you subscribe to Apple Music, Apple One Family, or Apple One Premier, you can [use Family Sharing](#) to share Apple Music with up to five other family members. Once your [family is set up](#), your family group doesn't need to do anything—Apple Music is available to them the first time they open the Music app after your subscription begins.

If you [join a family group](#) that subscribes to Apple Music, Apple One Family, or Apple One Premier, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing Apple Music with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, [leave a Family Sharing group](#), or [remove a member from a Family Sharing group](#).

Change or cancel your Apple Music subscription

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the My Account button] or your profile picture.
3. Tap Manage Subscription, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you're not a subscriber, you can use Music to play music synced to iPhone from a Mac or a Windows device, play and download previous iTunes Store purchases, and play Apple Music radio for free.

Related

[Get personalized recommendations in Music on iPhone](#)

[Mark items as favorites in Apple Music on iPhone](#)

[Create an Apple Music profile on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Get personalized recommendations](#)

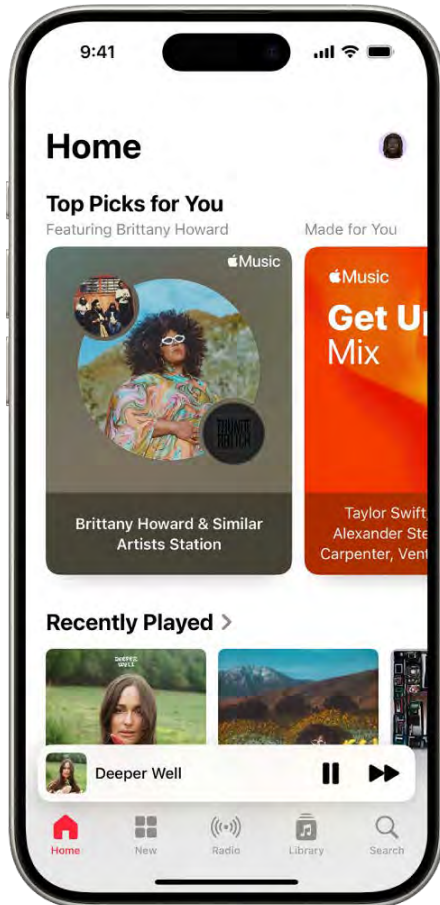
Get personalized recommendations in Music on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, set up the Music app so that you see playlists, albums, and songs based on your tastes.

As soon as you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can make selections so that you see playlists, albums, and songs based on your preferences. If you don't want Music to make recommendations, you can also turn off your listening history.

- COMMENT - #ba #music



[Alt text: The Home screen in the Music app showing Top Picks at the top. You can swipe left or right to view more music chosen just for you. Recently Played appears below.]

Select your favorite genres and artists

When you first tap Home, you're asked to tell Apple Music what you like. Apple Music uses these preferences when recommending music.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the genres you like (double-tap those you love, and touch and hold the genres you don't care for).
3. Tap Next, then do the same with the artists that appear.

Tell Apple Music to ignore your listening habits

You can turn off your listening history so that Apple Music ignores your listening habits and adjusts new music recommendations and the contents of Replay playlists.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Music.
2. Turn off Use Listening History.

This action also hides all the music you play from your followers on Apple Music. To hide only certain playlists or albums, see [Hide music from your followers](#).

Related

[Play music on iPhone](#)

[Tell Apple Music what you enjoy on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Mark items as favorites](#)

Mark items as favorites in Apple Music on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Music on iPhone, select favorite items (such as artists and songs) to receive notifications and easily find your favorite music.

You can mark items as “favorites” in Music to make them easier to find. If you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can get notifications on new releases from your favorite artists, and easily get back to their music from the Home tab.

Add favorite playlists, artists, albums, and songs

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Add a favorite playlist:* Touch and hold a playlist or tap  [Alt text: the More button] next to a playlist, then tap Favorite.
 - *Add a favorite artist:* Go to an artist page, then tap  [Alt text: the Favorite button] at the top of the screen.

When you mark an artist as a favorite, they appear below Favorite Artists in Home, and their music is recommended more often.

- *Add a favorite album:* Touch and hold an album, then choose Favorite. Or tap an album, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Favorite.
- *Add a favorite song:* Touch and hold a song or tap  [Alt text: the More button] next to a song, then tap Favorite. Or on the Now Playing screen, tap  [Alt text: the Favorite button].

When you mark a song as a favorite, it appears in the Favorite Songs playlist. To view that playlist, tap Library, then tap Playlists.

You can easily find favorite items in your music library. Tap Library, choose Playlists, Artists, Albums, or Songs, tap  [Alt text: the Filter Menu button], then choose Favorites.

Remove playlists, artists, albums, and songs as favorites

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, choose Playlists, Artists, Albums, or Songs, tap  [Alt text: the Filter Menu button], then choose Favorites
3. Touch and hold a playlist, artist, album, or song, then tap Undo Favorite.

Related

[Find new music with Apple Music on iPhone](#)

[Tell Apple Music what you enjoy on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Add music and listen offline](#)

Add music to iPhone and listen offline

Metadata

Summary: In Music on iPhone, add music from Apple Music to your music library, then download it to your device to play any time.

As soon as you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can add and download songs and videos from Apple Music to your music library. You can stream music you add to iPhone when you have an internet connection. To play music when you're not connected to the internet, you need to download it first.

Add music from Apple Music to your library

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
 - Touch and hold a song, album, playlist, or video, then tap Add to Library.
 - When viewing the contents of an album or playlist, tap  [Alt text: the Add button] near the top of the screen to add the album or playlist, or tap  [Alt text: the More button] next to a song, then tap Add to Library to add that song.
 - On the Now Playing screen, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Add to Library.

Music you add to iPhone is also added to other devices if you're signed in to the same Apple Account and have Sync Library turned on (go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Music, then turn on Sync Library).

Download music from Apple Music to your iPhone

Before you can download music from Apple Music to your library, you need to turn on Sync Library. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Music, then turn on Sync Library. Then follow these steps to download music.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

- *Download a song, album, or playlist:* Touch and hold music you added to your library, then tap Download.

After you add a playlist or album, you can also tap  [Alt text: the Download button] at the top of the screen.

- *Always download music:* Go to Settings > Apps > Music, then turn on Automatic Downloads.

Songs you add are automatically downloaded to iPhone.

- *See download progress:* On the Library screen, tap Downloaded Music, then tap Downloading.

Note: If the music you're downloading is available in Dolby Atmos, the Dolby icon  [ALT N/A] appears next to the item, and you can download it either in Dolby Atmos or in stereo. To download music in Dolby Atmos when available, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Music, then turn on Download in Dolby Atmos. See [Play Dolby Atmos music](#).

Delete music from your library

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the song, album, playlist, or music video, then tap Delete from Library.

Manage storage space

To manage storage space, do any of the following:

- *Remove music and videos stored on iPhone:* Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone, touch and hold a song, album, playlist, music video, TV show, or movie that you've downloaded, tap Remove, then tap Remove Downloads.

The item is removed from iPhone, but not from your music library on your other devices.

- *Free up music storage:* If iPhone is low on storage space, you can automatically remove downloaded music that you haven't played in a while. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Music > Optimize Storage.

- *Remove all songs or certain artists from iPhone:* Go to Settings > Apps > Music > Downloaded Music, tap Edit, then tap  [Alt text: the Delete button] next to All Songs or the artists whose music you want to delete.
- *Remove all Apple Music songs from iPhone:* Go to Settings > Apps > Music, then turn off Sync Library.

The songs are removed from iPhone but remain in your music library on your other devices. Music you purchased or synced also remains.

Choose cellular data options for Music

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Music, then turn on Cellular Data.
2. Do any of the following:
 - Turn Download over Cellular on or off.
 - Tap Audio Quality, turn on Lossless Audio, then tap Cellular Streaming to choose a setting (None, High Efficiency, High Quality, Lossless, or High-Resolution Lossless).

High Quality, Lossless, and High-Resolution Lossless use significantly more cellular data than High Efficiency, which may incur additional charges from your cellular carrier. Songs may also take longer to start playing.

Related

[Search for music on iPhone](#)

Create a profile to share

NAV TITLE: [Create an Apple Music Profile](#)

Create an Apple Music profile on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Music on iPhone, create an Apple Music profile to see what your friends are listening to (and to show them what you're listening to).

After you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can create an Apple Music profile that features your favorite playlists and what you're currently listening to. You can share your profile with everyone or only friends you invite.

After you create a profile, you can choose the playlists you want to share. Additionally, you can view profiles created by friends or request to follow them and see what they're listening to.

Create a profile

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the My Account button] .
3. Tap Set up Profile, then follow the onscreen instructions to create a profile.

After you finish setting up your profile, you can [find friends](#) whose music profile you'd like to follow or [choose who you share music with](#) (so you can show friends what you're listening to).

Note: If you're the organizer of a Family Sharing group, you can allow children ages 13 to 18 to create Apple Music profiles (or prevent them from doing so). Children under 13 can't create Apple Music profiles. (Age restrictions vary by region.) See [Block adult content](#).

Edit your profile

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the My Account button] or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile at the top of the screen, then tap Edit to make updates.

You can edit your profile to [choose who you share music with](#) or to [choose music to share with your followers](#).

Delete your profile

You can delete your profile so that your playlists and music no longer appear in searches, and your music or profile isn't visible to your followers.

Note: Your Apple Music subscription, library, and playlists aren't affected if you delete your profile, but you're no longer able to see what your friends are listening to.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the My Account button] or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile at the top of the screen, then tap Edit.
4. Scroll to the bottom, then tap Delete Profile.

If you create your profile again within 90 days, your previous information and followers will be restored.

Note: If you delete your profile, it might take several minutes before it's no longer visible to your followers or in searches.

Related

[Create, edit, and delete music playlists on iPhone](#)

Share music with friends on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Music on iPhone, share music with your friends. You can allow anyone to follow you or just those you choose, and block others.

After you [create an Apple Music profile](#), you can share music with your friends. You can allow anyone to follow you or just those you choose, and block others.

Choose music to share with your followers

By default, your followers see the playlists you create, but you can choose not to share some playlists.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the My Account button] or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile, tap Edit, then turn Shared Playlists on or off.

To share playlists with people who don't follow you, touch and hold a playlist, then tap Share Playlist.

Note: If you make changes to music you share—edit or stop sharing a playlist, for example—those changes are reflected on your followers' devices.

Hide music from your followers

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the My Account button] or your profile picture.
3. Touch and hold the playlist or album (below Listening To).
4. Tap Hide from Profile.

The listening history for this item won't appear in your profile or be visible to the people who follow you. If you don't want your followers to see any of the music you listen to, tap Edit on the profile screen, then turn off Listening To at the bottom of the screen.

Note: It may take up to 10 minutes before music you hide is no longer visible to your followers.

To hide all the music you play from your followers on Apple Music, see [Tell Apple Music to ignore your listening habits](#).

Share your profile

You can share your profile using email, Messages, or another app you choose.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap  [Alt text: the My Account button] or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile.
4. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , tap Share Profile, then choose a sharing option.

You can also share the profile of anyone you follow, or who follows you.

Choose who you share music with

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the My Account button] or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile, tap Edit, then tap People You Approve if you want to be followed only by people you choose. (Everyone includes all Apple Music subscribers who have a profile.)

For additional privacy settings, see [Hide music from your followers](#).

Respond to follow requests

If someone requests to follow you, you can accept or decline the request. You receive requests only if you select People You Approve in your profile. See [Choose who you share music with](#).

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the My Account button] or your profile picture.
3. Tap Follow Requests, then accept or decline the requests.

You may receive follow requests in other ways—as a link in an email or a text message, for example. To accept, tap the link.

Turn on or off notifications about your friends' activity

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the My Account button] or your profile picture.
3. Tap Notifications, then turn on (or off) Friend Activity.

When the option is on, you get notified when friends follow you and add your playlists.

Prevent users from following you

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the My Account button] or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile, touch and hold a profile picture, then choose Block.

People you block won't see your music or be able to find your profile. They can still play your shared playlists if they added them to their library.

Report a concern

If you have a concern about a follower, touch and hold their profile picture, then tap Report a Concern.

Related

[Create, edit, and delete music playlists on iPhone](#)

[Collaborate on a playlist in Music on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [See what friends are listening to](#)

See what friends are listening to in Music on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Music on iPhone, find and follow friends to see what they're listening to.

After you [create an Apple Music profile](#), you can find and follow friends to see what they're listening to.

Choose how to find friends

Before you can choose which friends to share music with, you need to allow Music to access your contacts.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the My Account button] or your profile picture.
3. Do any of the following:
 - *Allow Apple Music access to your contacts:* Select the Contacts on Apple Music option so Apple Music can access your contacts and recommend new friends to you periodically.
 - *Allow friends to find you by Apple Account:* Select the Allow Finding by Apple Account option and friends who have your Apple Account information can see you as a recommended friend.

Follow friends

There are several ways to follow people:

- Add friends when you [set up a profile](#).
- After you set up your profile, swipe to the bottom of the profile screen, tap Follow More Friends, then tap Follow next to those you want to follow.

You can follow friends who are in your contacts list and who use Apple Music.

- On the profile screen, touch and hold a profile picture, then tap Follow.

- Tap Search, enter a friend's name, tap it in the results, then tap Follow.

Note: You can only find friends who have an Apple Music profile using Search. Additionally, you must be 13 years or older to view Apple Music profiles. (Age restrictions vary by region.)

To see the people you're following and those who follow you, open the profile screen, then swipe up.

If a profile picture has a lock on it, you need to ask that person to follow them. After your request is accepted, you see the person's shared playlists and the music they're listening to.

See what your friends are listening to

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then do any of the following:
 - *See what your friends are listening to:* Scroll down to Friends Are Listening To, then tap an item to play it.
 - *Listen to a mix of songs your friends are listening to:* Swipe left on Made For You, then tap Friends Mix.
 - *See what a follower or person you follow is listening to:* Tap  [ALT text: the My Account button] or your profile picture, then tap View Profile. Tap a person's profile picture to see shared playlists and music they're listening to. You also see their followers and the people they follow.

Stop following friends

You can stop following a friend if you no longer want to see what they're listening to.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [ALT text: the My Account button] or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile, touch and hold the profile picture of a person you follow, then tap Unfollow.

Related

[Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone](#)

Find and play music

Find music

NAV TITLE: [Search for music](#)

Search for music on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Music on iPhone, browse music categories and search for artists, albums, playlists, and genres.

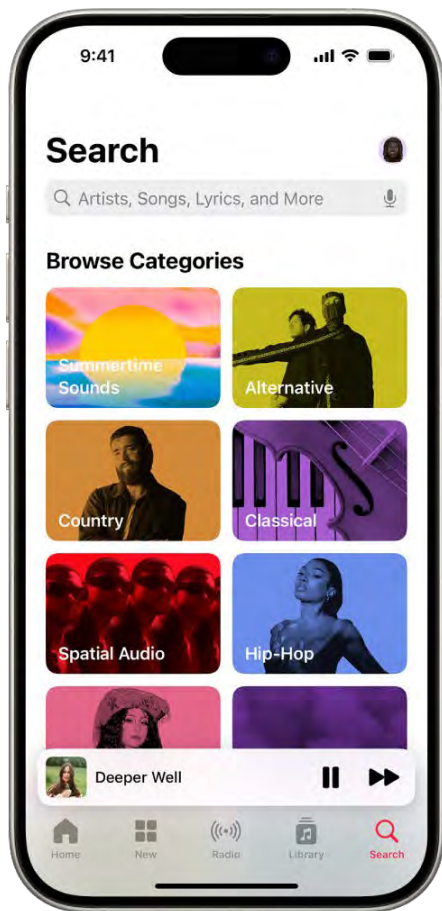
Using Search, you can quickly browse through music categories, see recent searches, and search Apple Music or your library.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search, then do any of the following:
 - Tap a category such as Pop or Fitness.
 - Tap the search field to quickly find items you recently searched for—a song or artist, for example.
 - Tap the search field, tap Apple Music, then enter what you’re searching for (such as a song, artist, or lyric).

Tip: You can search for a song in Apple Music based on its lyrics. In the search field, enter a few of the words you remember to find a song.
 - Tap the search field, tap Library, then enter what you’re searching for (such as a song, album, or playlist).
3. Tap a result to play it.

Siri: Say something like: “Play the song with the lyrics” and then say a key phrase from the lyrics. [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

- COMMENT - #ba #music



[Alt text: The Search screen showing a search field at the top. The Browse Categories section below shows eight categories.]

Explicit lyrics and lyrics search aren't available in all countries or regions.

Related

[Find music shared with you on iPhone](#)

[Find new music with Apple Music on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Find music shared with you](#)

Find music shared with you on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Music on iPhone, find and play music that friends have shared with you using the Messages app.

When a friend [shares music with you in the Messages app](#), you can easily find it in Shared with You in the Music app.

Note: Music must be turned on in Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Messages > Shared with You, and your friend must be in your contacts list in Contacts.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, swipe up to Shared with You, then do any of the following:
 - Tap a song to listen to it.
 - Tap the name of the person, people, or group that shared the song to reply to them using Messages.
 - Touch and hold the song to take other actions—for example, add it to your library, create a station, reply to the sender, or remove it.

Related

[Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Find new music](#)

Find new music with Apple Music on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Apple Music on iPhone, find new and noteworthy music, music videos, playlists, and more.

When you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can browse new and noteworthy music, music videos, playlists, and more.

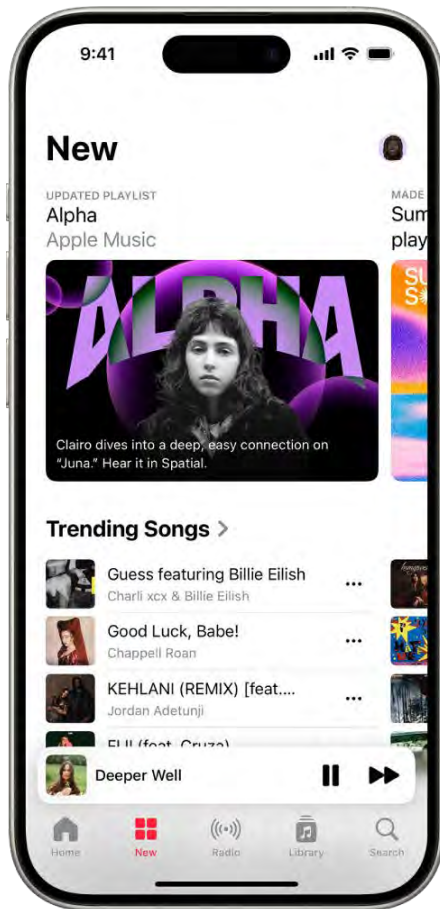
Find new Apple Music

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap New to find new music, then do any of the following:
 - *Explore featured music:* Swipe through featured songs and videos at the top of the screen.
 - *Browse playlists created by music experts:* Tap one of the many playlists created by music experts.
 - *See what's hot:* Tap a song below the Trending Songs heading. Swipe left to see more songs.
 - *Explore new music:* Swipe through the albums listed below New Releases.

- *Listen to the top songs from around the world:* Tap one of the Daily Top 100 playlists. These playlists reflect the day's most popular songs in countries across the globe.
- *Listen to songs from upcoming albums:* Tap an album below Coming Soon, then tap an available song to play it.
- *Watch music videos:* Tap Music Videos, then tap a featured music video or playlist of music videos.
- *Play the day's most popular songs:* Tap Charts, then tap a song, playlist, album, or music video to play it. Tap All Genres at the top of the screen to see the top songs and music videos in a genre you choose.
- *Browse your favorite genres:* Tap Browse by Genre, choose a genre, then tap a featured playlist, song, album, artist, or radio station to enjoy music handpicked by music experts.
- *Play music that matches your mood:* Tap Moods and Activities, then tap a playlist such as Feel Good, Romance, or Party.

Note: To see more music, swipe left on the album art. To see all the music in a section—New Releases, for example—tap > [Alt text: the Forward button] next to the section's name.

- COMMENT - #ba #music



[Alt text: The New screen showing a featured playlist at the top. You can swipe left to see more featured music and videos. The Trending Songs section appears below. You can swipe up on the screen to explore new and recommended music.]

Discover your most-played music of the year

For every year you've subscribed to Apple Music (and played enough music to become eligible), Apple Music creates a Replay personal chart, ranking the songs you've played the most.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, swipe down to Replay: Your Top Songs by Year, then tap a year.

You can also find deeper insights into your listening throughout the year at replay.music.apple.com. See the Apple Support article [How to get your Apple Music Replay](#).

Discover music you've never played before

Using your listening history and taste profile, Apple Music recommends music you may like that you've never played before.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Home, then swipe down to Stations for You.
3. Tap Discovery Station, then choose an option.

Turn on or off new music notifications

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the My Account button] or your profile picture.
3. Tap Notifications, then turn on (or off) New Music.

Related

[Mark items as favorites in Apple Music on iPhone](#)
[Play music on iPhone](#)

Play music

NAV TITLE: [Play music](#)

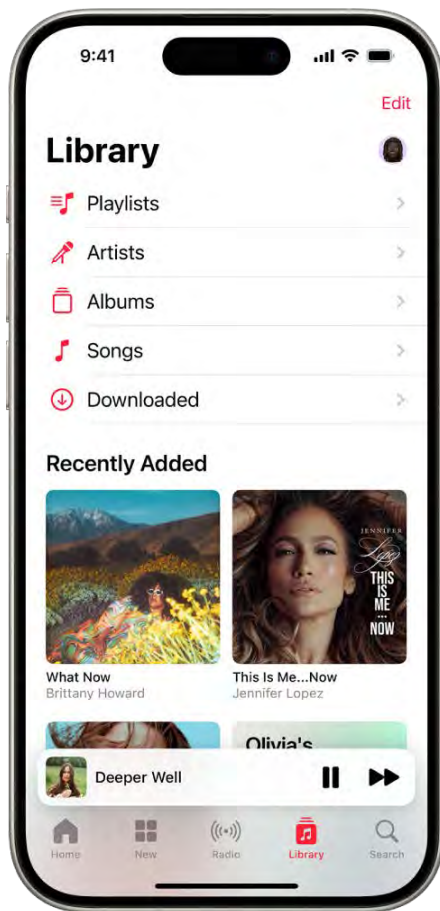
Play music on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Music on iPhone, play music you added from Apple Music, music and videos you synced from your computer, iTunes Store purchases, and more.

Play music you added or downloaded from Apple Music, music and videos you synced to iPhone, and your iTunes Store purchases.

- COMMENT - #ba #music



[Alt text: The Library screen showing a list of categories including Playlists, Artists, Albums, Songs, and Downloaded. The Recently Added heading appears below the list. The MiniPlayer showing the title of the current song and the Pause and Next buttons appear near the bottom.]

Play songs from your library

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap a category, such as Albums or Songs; tap Downloaded to view only music stored on iPhone.

Tip: To play songs from an artist's entire catalog—mixing hits and deep cuts—go to an artist page, then tap  [Alt text: the Play button] next to the artist's name.

3. Scroll to browse—or type in the search field to filter your results—to find what you want to play.
4. Tap an item, then tap Play, or tap Shuffle to shuffle an album or playlist.

You can also touch and hold a playlist or album, then tap Play.

To change the list of Library categories, tap Edit, then select categories you'd like to add, such as Genres and Compilations. Tap any existing categories to remove them.

Stream recommended songs

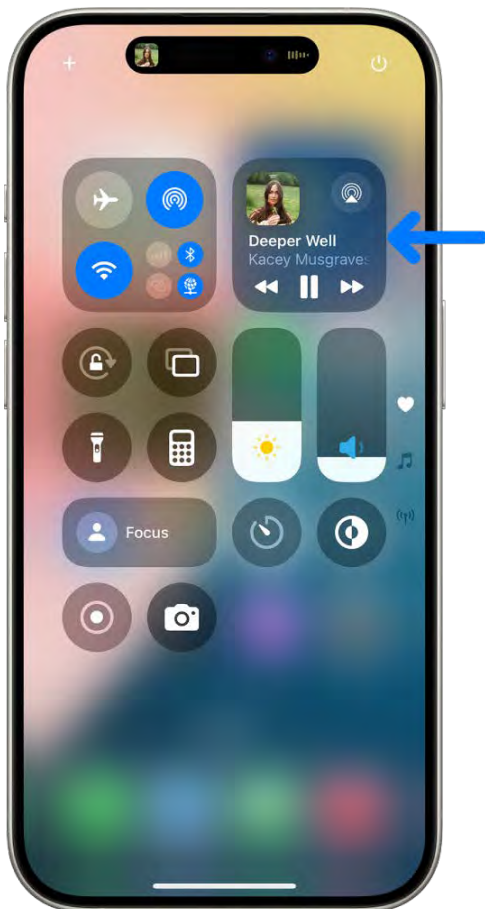
1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following to find music you want to play:
 - *View recommendations tailored for you:* Tap Home, then tap a playlist or album.
 - *See what's new in Apple Music:* Tap New, then find music by mood, new releases, charts, and more.
 - *Search the Apple Music catalog:* See [Search for music](#).
3. Tap an item, then tap Play, or tap Shuffle to shuffle an album or playlist.

You can also touch and hold a playlist or album, then tap Play.

Play music from the Lock Screen or when using another app

[Open Control Center](#), then tap the audio card.

- COMMENT - #ba #music



[Alt text: The iPhone Control Center showing an arrow pointing to the audio card where you can control music

from the Lock Screen or when using another app.]

Play music shared on a nearby computer

If a computer on your network shares music through Home Sharing, you can stream its music to your iPhone.

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Music, tap Sign In below Home Sharing, then sign in to your Apple Account.
2. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A], tap Library > Home Sharing, then choose a shared library.

Sort your music

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Playlists, Albums, Songs, TV & Movies, or Music Videos.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button], then choose a sorting method, such as Title, Artist, Date Added, or Release Date.

Related

[Tell Apple Music what you enjoy on iPhone](#)

[Use the music player controls on iPhone](#)

[Show song credits and lyrics on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use the music player controls](#)

Use the music player controls on iPhone

Metadata

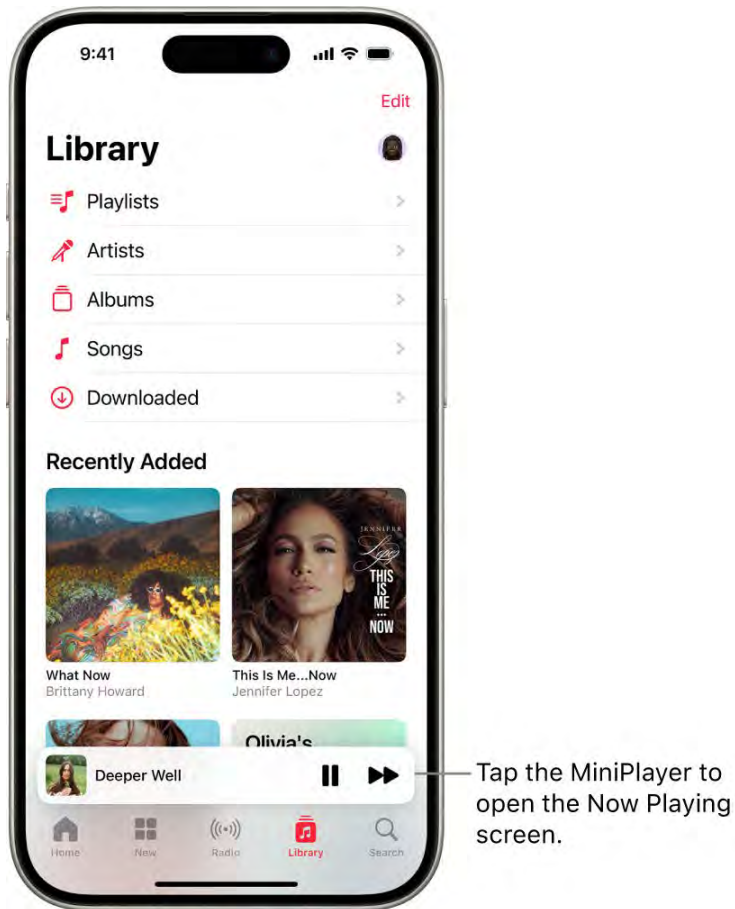
Summary: In Apple Music on iPhone, control the playback of your music, like pausing, shuffling, and more.

You can play and control music in the Music app  [ALT N/A] in two different ways—the MiniPlayer and the Now Playing screen.

Use the MiniPlayer

The MiniPlayer shows the song that's currently playing. You can use the MiniPlayer to play or pause music, or skip to the next track.

- COMMENT - #ba #music



[Alt text: The Library screen, showing the MiniPlayer near the bottom. The MiniPlayer shows the title of the song that's playing. The Pause and Next Track buttons are to the right of the song title. Tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.]

Use the controls in the Now Playing screen

- COMMENT - #ba #music



[Alt text: The Now Playing screen showing the various controls and buttons.]

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Do any of the following:
 - *Adjust the volume:* Drag the volume slider.
You can also use the volume buttons on the side of iPhone.
 - *Scrub to any point in a song:* Drag the playhead.
 - *Navigate to the artist, album, or playlist:* Tap the artist name below the song title, then choose an option.
 - *Turn animated album cover art on or off:* Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Music, then tap Animated Art and choose an option.

For additional control over your music, tap any of these buttons:

(table aria-label=Buttons on the Now Playing screen)

Control	Description
 [Alt text: The Dismiss Now Playing Screen button.]	Dismiss the Now Playing screen.
 [Alt text: The Favorite button.]	Mark the song as a favorite. See Mark items as favorites .
 [Alt text: The More button.]	Tap for more options.
 [Alt text: The Previous Track button.]	Go back to the beginning of the song. Tap again to play the previous song in an album or playlist. Touch and hold to rewind through the current song.
 [Alt text: The Pause button.]	Pause playback.
 [Alt text: The Play button.]	Play the current song.
 [Alt text: The Next Track button.]	Skip to the next song. Touch and hold to fast-forward through the current song.
 [Alt text: The Lyrics button.]	Show time-synced lyrics (lyrics not available for all songs).
 [Alt text: The Playback Destination button.]	Stream music to Bluetooth or AirPlay-enabled devices.
 [Alt text: The Playing Next button.]	Show the queue .

Stream music to Bluetooth® or AirPlay-enabled devices

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Playback Destination button], then choose a device.

See [Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers](#).

Note: You can play the same music on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices, such as two or more HomePod speakers. You can also pair two sets of AirPods to one iPhone and enjoy the same song or movie along with a friend. See [Play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices](#) in this user guide and [Share audio with AirPods and Beats headphones](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

Related

[Adjust the sound in Music on iPhone](#)

[Play music on iPhone](#)

[Use Siri to play music on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use Siri to play music](#)

Use Siri to play music on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Use Siri on iPhone to play songs, playlists, albums, and more.

[Apple Music subscribers](#) can use Siri to control music playback on iPhone.

[Activate Siri](#), then make your request. You can use Siri in a wide variety of ways:

- COMMENT - #ba #music

- *Play Apple Music:* You can play any song, artist, album, playlist, or station. Say, for example, “Play ‘Party Girls’ by Victoria Monét” or “Play Tainy.”
- *Play popular songs from different genres or years:* Say “Play the top songs from 1990.”
- *Play music on AirPlay-enabled devices in a specific room:* Say something like “Play the latest album by Loraine James in the living room.”
- *Play music picked just for you:* Say something like “Play something I like” or “Play my Chill Mix.”
- *Let Apple Music help you find music that’s new to you:* Say “Play my Discovery Station.”
- *Add music from Apple Music to your library:* Say, for example, “Add ‘Red Flag’ by Brittany Howard to my library.” Or while playing something, say “Add this to my library.”
- *Add a song or album to a playlist:* While playing a song, say something like “Add this song to my Workout playlist” or “Add this album to my Sunday Morning playlist.”
- *Find out more about the current song:* Say “What’s playing?”, “Who sings this song?”, or “Who is this song by?”

Tip: You can also identify a song playing on or near iPhone by [adding the Music Recognition control to Control Center](#). [Open Control Center](#), tap  [Alt text: the Add button] at the top left, tap Add a Control at the bottom, then tap the Recognize Music icon. With a song playing, open Control Center, then tap  [Alt text: the Recognize Music button] .

- *Play songs based on their lyrics:* Say “Play the song with the lyrics” and then say a key phrase from the lyrics.

[Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Siri can also help you find music in the iTunes Store. See [Get music, movies, and TV shows in the iTunes Store](#).

Related

[Adjust the sound in Music on iPhone](#)

[Find out what Siri can do on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Play lossless audio](#)

Play lossless audio in Music on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, you can play and download lossless music.

[Apple Music subscribers](#) can access millions of tracks encoded using lossless audio compression.

Lossless compression is a form of compression that preserves all of the original data. Apple has developed its own lossless audio compression technology called Apple Lossless Audio Codec (ALAC). The entire Apple Music catalog is encoded using ALAC in resolutions ranging from 16-bit/44.1 kHz (CD Quality) up to 24-bit/192 kHz.

What you need to know about lossless in Apple Music

- Streaming lossless audio over a cellular or Wi-Fi network consumes significantly more data. And downloading lossless audio uses significantly more space on your device. Higher resolutions use more data than lower ones.
- AirPods, AirPods Pro, AirPods Max, and Beats wireless headphones use Apple AAC Bluetooth Codec to ensure excellent audio quality. However, Bluetooth® connections aren’t lossless.
- To get a lossless version of music that you already downloaded from Apple Music, just delete the music and redownload it from the Apple Music catalog.

- To play songs at sample rates higher than 48 kHz on iPhone, you need an external digital-to-analog converter.

Note: Apple Music and lossless aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Turn on Lossless Audio and choose audio quality settings

You can choose audio quality settings for cellular streaming, Wi-Fi streaming, and downloads.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Music.
2. Tap Audio Quality, then tap Lossless Audio to turn it on or off.
3. Choose the audio quality for streaming and downloading audio.
 - Choose Lossless for a maximum resolution of 24-bit/48 kHz.
 - Choose Hi-Res Lossless for a maximum resolution of 24-bit/192 kHz.

The audio quality of streamed music depends on song availability, network conditions, and the capability of connected headphones or speakers.

Identify lossless music

The Lossless icon  [ALT N/A] appears on album pages when the music is available in lossless audio.

To see the Lossless icon for music on the Now Playing screen, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Music > Audio Quality, then turn on Lossless Audio.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [About lossless audio in Apple Music](#).

Related

[Adjust the sound in Music on iPhone](#)

[Play music on iPhone](#)

[Play Spatial Audio in Dolby Atmos in Music on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Play Spatial Audio](#)

Play Spatial Audio in Dolby Atmos in Music on iPhone

Metadata

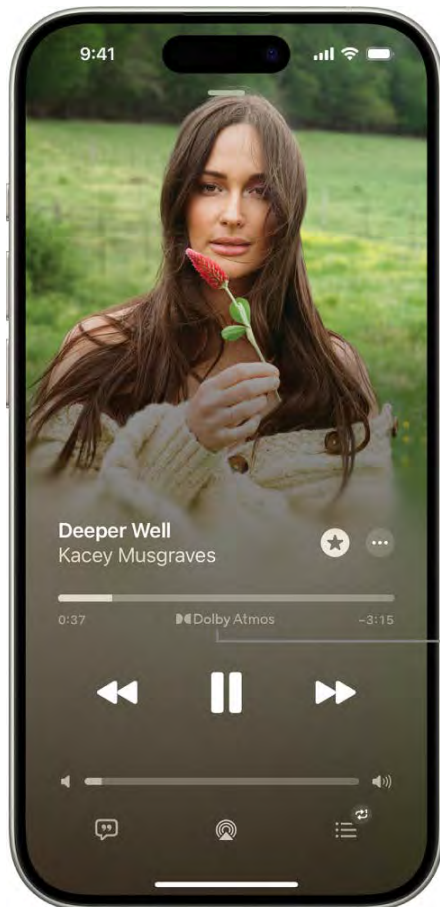
Summary: On iPhone, listen to music with an immersive, three-dimensional sound.

[Apple Music subscribers](#) can play available tracks in Dolby Atmos, which creates an immersive, three-dimensional audio experience on stereo headphones and speakers or receivers compatible with Dolby Atmos.

Albums available in Dolby Atmos have the Dolby Atmos icon  [ALT N/A] . If a track is playing in Dolby Atmos, the icon also appears on the Now Playing screen.

Note: Apple Music and Dolby Atmos aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

- COMMENT - #ba #music



The track is playing in Dolby Atmos.

[Alt text: The Now Playing screen showing the Dolby Atmos icon for the track that's playing.]

Turn on Dolby Atmos

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Music.
2. Tap Dolby Atmos, then choose Automatic or Always On.
 - *Automatic:* Plays Dolby Atmos whenever iPhone is connected to compatible headphones such as AirPods (3rd generation), AirPods Pro, or AirPods Max, or to speakers or receivers compatible with Dolby Atmos.
 - *Always On:* Plays Dolby Atmos on any headphones or speakers. The Music app will attempt to play Dolby Atmos tracks on any headphones or speakers connected to iPhone.

Dolby Atmos will play on any headphones, but not all speakers will play Dolby Atmos as intended.

Control Spatial Audio and head tracking on iPhone

When you play supported music on your iPhone with AirPods (3rd generation), AirPods Pro, or AirPods Max, you can use Spatial Audio and head tracking to create an immersive, theater-like environment with sound that surrounds you. Follow these steps to control Spatial Audio and head tracking in Control Center.

1. Wear your AirPods, then [open Control Center](#).
2. Touch and hold the volume control, then tap Spatial Audio at the lower right.
3. Tap one of the following:
 - *Off*: Turns off both Spatial Audio and head tracking.
 - *Fixed*: Turns on Spatial Audio without head tracking.
 - *Head Tracked*: Turns on both Spatial Audio and head tracking. This setting allows the sound to follow the movement of your head.

The settings you choose are saved and applied automatically the next time you use that app. For example, if you tap Fixed while listening to a song in Apple Music, the Fixed setting is automatically used the next time you play a song in Apple Music.

Note: To disable head tracking for all apps on your iPhone, go to Settings > Accessibility > AirPods, tap your AirPods, then turn off Follow iPhone .

Download songs in Dolby Atmos

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Music.
2. Turn on Download in Dolby Atmos.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [About Spatial Audio with Dolby Atmos in Apple Music](#).

Related

[Adjust the sound in Music on iPhone](#)

[Play music on iPhone](#)

[Play lossless audio in Music on iPhone](#)

[Control Spatial Audio and head tracking](#)

NAV TITLE: [Listen to radio](#)

Listen to radio stations in Music on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Radio in the Music app on iPhone, create your own radio stations and play radio shows, new music, and interviews.

Apple Music features three world-class radio stations (Apple Music 1, Apple Music Hits, and Apple Music Country), as well as a collection of stations based on different genres. These stations provide a great way to explore and enjoy new music or keep up with your favorites.

You can also create your own custom stations, based on your pick of artist, song, or genre.

In addition to radio, you can play Apple Music TV, a free, 24-hour curated livestream of popular new music videos that includes exclusive premieres, music video blocks, live shows and events, chart countdowns, and more.

Play Apple Music radio

You must be signed in to your Apple Account, but you don't need to [subscribe to Apple Music](#), to play live Apple Music radio (Apple Music 1, Apple Music Hits, or Apple Music Country) and Apple Music TV.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Radio, then tap one of the currently playing Apple Music radio stations.

Note: Because Apple Music radio stations are live radio, you can't rewind or skip songs.

Choose a radio station by genre

You must [subscribe to Apple Music](#) to play curated radio stations, such as Stations by Genre.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Radio, scroll down, then tap a genre listed below Stations by Genre.
3. Tap a featured station.

Create a station

You can create a radio station based on a particular artist or song. Chances are, if you like that artist or song, you'll like the music the station plays.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold an artist or song.
3. Tap Create Station.

To create a station on the Now Playing screen, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Create Station.

Play broadcast radio stations

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Do any of the following:

- *Use Siri:* [Activate Siri](#), then say something like, “Play Wild 94.9” or “Tune in to ESPN Radio.”
- *Search for a station:* Tap Search, enter the station in the search field, then tap a result to play the station.

You can search for stations by name, call sign, frequency, and nickname.

- *Choose a station in the Radio tab:* Tap Radio, scroll up, then choose a station below the Local Broadcasters or International Broadcasters heading.

Note: You don’t need a subscription to Apple Music to play broadcast radio. Broadcast radio isn’t available in all countries or regions and not all stations are available in all countries or regions.

Related

[Play music on iPhone](#)

[Adjust the sound in Music on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Play music together using SharePlay](#)

Play music together using SharePlay on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Use SharePlay at home when you’re playing music to a speaker, then invite others to listen to music together.

You can use SharePlay while playing music on a HomePod, Apple TV, or other third-party Bluetooth® speaker, and everyone can control the music with their iPhone.

Before you begin

- The host must have an iPhone with iOS 18 or later and be an Apple Music subscriber.
- Participants must have an iPhone with iOS 18 or later, but don’t need to have an Apple Music subscription.
- Everyone must have an internet connection and Bluetooth turned on.
- Everyone must allow their contacts to discover them when playing music to a speaker—Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Music, then turn on Discoverable by Nearby Contacts if it isn’t on already.

Start SharePlay from Music on your iPhone

To use SharePlay to play music together, you (the host) start on your iPhone.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Playback Destination button], then select a playback destination.

The music starts playing to the device you selected. See [Stream video and audio with AirPlay](#).

4. Tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen, then tap  [Alt text: the SharePlay button].
A QR code appears; tap the QR code to enlarge it.
5. To begin controlling the music, participants can scan the QR code on your iPhone.

Join SharePlay with the iPhone camera

1. Go to the Camera app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Point the camera at the QR code on an iPhone that's already joined SharePlay.

A button appears below the picture of the QR code.

3. Tap the button, then tap Connect.

The host receives a notification and must tap  [Alt text: the Checkmark button] on their iPhone to allow you to join.

Tip: Once you approve a participant to join SharePlay, they're automatically approved next time they join.

Leave SharePlay

- Tap  [Alt text: the SharePlay button] at the bottom of the Now Playing screen, then tap Leave or End.

Related

[Play music on iPhone](#)

[Adjust the sound in Music on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Play music together in the car](#)

Play music together in the car using SharePlay and CarPlay on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Using SharePlay, passengers can stream music from their devices to CarPlay.

Using SharePlay and CarPlay, you and your passengers can all control the music that's playing in the car.

Passengers can join SharePlay in two ways: by tapping a notification on their iPhone or by scanning a QR code, either on the CarPlay Now Playing screen or on the Now Playing screen of another passenger's iPhone.

Before you begin

- The driver must have an iPhone with iOS 17 or later and be an Apple Music subscriber.
- Passengers must have an iPhone with iOS 17 or later, but don't need to have an Apple Music subscription.
- Everyone must allow their contacts to discover them when playing music in the car—go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Music, then turn on Discoverable by Nearby Contacts if it isn't on already.

Start SharePlay with CarPlay on your iPhone

To use SharePlay in the car, you and your passengers each play a part.

1. Begin playing music from your iPhone using CarPlay.

A notification appears on the Lock Screen of passengers' iPhone devices. After they tap Connect, you receive a notification in CarPlay.

2. Tap a passenger's name, then tap  [Alt text: the Checkmark button] to allow the passenger to choose and stream music from your iPhone.

After you approve a passenger, they can join SharePlay in the future without going through the same process unless you end their access.

Use a QR code to join SharePlay

You can also let passengers join SharePlay over Bluetooth® by scanning a QR code.

1. On the Now Playing screen in CarPlay, tap  [Alt text: the SharePlay button] .

A QR code appears on the CarPlay screen.

2. Ask a passenger to open the Camera app on their iPhone and point the camera at the QR code.

A button appears below the picture of the QR code on their iPhone to request a connection to SharePlay. The passenger taps the button, then taps Connect.

3. Tap  [Alt text: the Checkmark button] on the CarPlay screen to allow the passenger to join.

Use a QR code to add other passengers

If you're a passenger using SharePlay to control music in a car, you can invite other passengers while the driver focuses on the road.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open the Now Playing screen, then tap  [Alt text: the SharePlay button] at the bottom of the screen.

A SharePlay window appears, listing all the participants as well as a QR code for joining.

3. Ask a passenger to open the Camera app on their iPhone and point the camera at the QR code, tap the button that appears below the code, then tap Connect.

The driver taps  [Alt text: the Checkmark button] on the CarPlay screen to allow the passenger to join.

Leave or end SharePlay in the car

- *If you're a passenger:* Tap  [Alt text: the SharePlay button] at the bottom of Now Playing, then tap Leave.
- *If you're the driver:* Tap End on the CarPlay screen.

Related

[Play music on iPhone](#)

[Adjust the sound in Music on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Adjust the sound](#)

Adjust the sound in Music on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Change the way music sounds on iPhone with EQ and Sound Check. Crossfade songs in playlists.

Change the way music sounds in the Music app  [ALT N/A] on iPhone with EQ and Sound Check. Crossfade songs in playlists.

WARNING: For important information about avoiding hearing loss, see [Important safety information](#).

Use EQ and normalize volume levels

- *Choose an equalization (EQ) setting:* Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Music > EQ.
- *Normalize the volume level of your audio:* Go to Settings > Apps > Music, then turn on Sound Check.

Crossfade songs in playlists

You can crossfade songs in a playlist, which creates a listening experience with no audio gaps between songs.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Music.
2. Turn on Crossfade, then drag the slider to choose the length of the crossfade.

Related

[Play music on iPhone](#)

[Adjust the volume on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Queue up your music](#)

Queue up your music on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Use the queue to see a list of songs coming up, add songs and videos to the queue, and see recently played songs.

Use the queue to see a list of upcoming songs, add songs and videos to the queue, and see what you recently played.

Use the queue

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Playing Next button], then tap a song to play it and the songs that follow.
To reorder the list, drag  [Alt text: the Reorder button]. To do more, see [Manage the queue](#).
4. Tap  [Alt text: the Playing Next button] again to hide the queue.

Add music and music videos to the queue

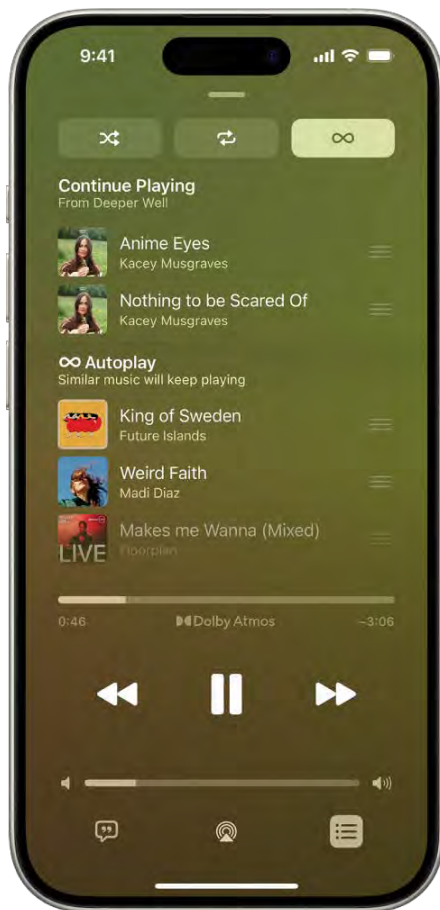
1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. While browsing or playing music, touch and hold a song, album, playlist, or video, then choose an option:
 - *Add music right after the currently playing item:* Tap Play Next.
 - *Add music to the end of the queue:* Tap Play After or Add to Queue.

Tip: If you're using HomePod to stream music and your friends are on [the same Wi-Fi network](#), they can add items to the queue. To learn more about HomePod speaker access, see the [HomePod User Guide](#).

Use Autoplay to add songs to the queue

If [you're an Apple Music subscriber](#) and you're not sure what to play next, use Autoplay. Once you play something, Autoplay adds similar songs and plays them at the end of the queue. When Autoplay is on and a song is playing, the Autoplay icon  [ALT N/A] appears on the Playing Next queue.

- COMMENT - #ba #music



[Alt text: The Now Playing screen showing the Playing Next queue with Autoplay turned on. Similar songs appear below the songs in the album.]

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Playing Next button], then tap  [Alt text: the Autoplay icon] at the top of the queue to turn Autoplay on.

When Autoplay is on, the button changes color. Tap it again to turn it off.

Note: When you turn off Autoplay on a device that uses your Apple Account—your iPhone, for example—Autoplay is turned off on all other devices that use the same Apple Account.

Manage the queue

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Playing Next button], then do any of the following:
 - *Change the order of songs in the queue:* Drag the songs into the order you want them to play.
 - *Add more songs to the queue:* Scroll below the Queue section, then tap Add Songs to Queue.
 - *Remove a song from the queue:* Swipe left on the song, then tap Remove.
 - *See how many songs are in the queue:* Scroll to the bottom of the queue.

When [multiple songs are repeating](#), you can see how many songs will be repeated instead.

- *Remove all songs from the queue:* Tap Clear at the top of the queue.

Tip: If you're using HomePod to stream music and your friends are on [the same Wi-Fi network](#), they can reorder items in the queue. To learn more about HomePod speaker access, see the [HomePod User Guide](#).

See what you recently played

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Playing Next button], then swipe down to see your playing history.

To play a song in the history, tap it. To remove your playing history, tap Clear.

Related

[Shuffle or repeat songs in Music on iPhone](#)

[Play music on iPhone](#)

[Adjust the sound in Music on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Shuffle or repeat songs](#)

Shuffle or repeat songs in Music on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Music on iPhone, set Music to shuffle the order or repeat songs or albums.

You can shuffle all songs and albums in your library (play them in random order) or just shuffle a playlist or album. You can also repeat individual songs, playlists, or albums.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Playing Next button], then do any of the following:
 - *Play your songs in random order (shuffle):* Tap  [Alt text: the Shuffle button]. Tap again to turn off shuffle.
 - *Repeat an album, playlist, or the entire queue:* Tap  [Alt text: the Repeat button].

Note: When multiple songs are repeating, you can view how many songs will be repeated—just scroll to the bottom of the queue.

 - *Repeat a single song:* Double-tap  [Alt text: the Repeat button]

Related

[Queue up your music on iPhone](#)

[Play music on iPhone](#)

[Adjust the sound in Music on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Sing along with Apple Music](#)

Sing along with Apple Music on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: With Apple Music Sing, adjust the volume of a supported song's main vocals and sing along with the instrumental tracks while viewing lyrics as they're highlighted.

[Apple Music subscribers](#) can use Apple Music Sing to view real-time, beat-by-beat lyrics for select songs, as well as adjust the volume of a song's vocals—allowing you to sing along with the music while viewing the lyrics as they're highlighted.

Apple Music Sing is available on iPhone 11 and later and iPhone SE (3rd generation) using iOS 16.2 or later.

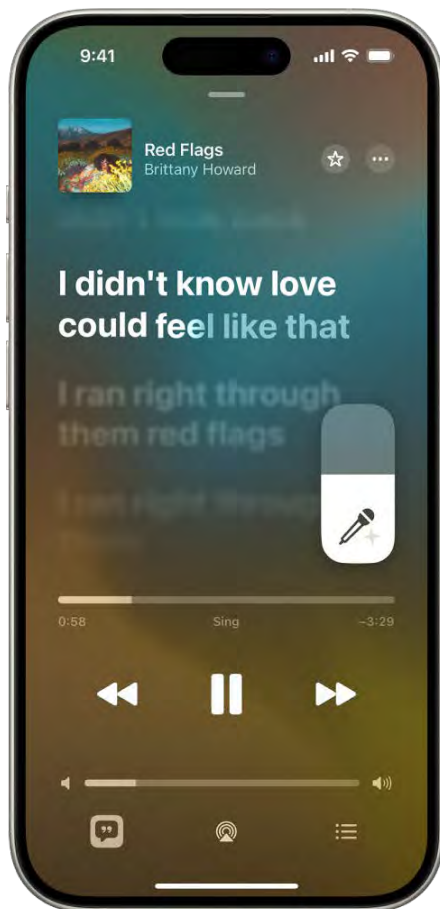
Adjust the volume of a song's vocals

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen, then tap  [Alt text: the Lyrics button].

3. Touch and hold  [Alt text: the Vocal Volume button] , then drag the slider up or down to adjust the vocal volume.
4. To turn off Apple Music Sing for the song, tap the slider.

If you're listening to a song playing with Dolby Atmos and you turn on Apple Music Sing, Dolby Atmos turns off and the song plays without surround sound. If you turn off Apple Music Sing, the song plays with Dolby Atmos.

- COMMENT - #ba #music



[Alt text: The Now Playing screen showing the Apple Music Sing slider to the right of the lyrics. The currently playing lyrics are highlighted.]

Sing onscreen with visual effects on Apple TV 4K

You can use your iPhone as a Continuity Camera to see yourself singing onscreen along with lyrics. You can add visual effects to your image and lyrics, which enhances the singalong experience.

See [Use your iPhone as a webcam on Mac](#) and [Sing along with Apple Music on Apple TV](#) in the Apple TV User Guide.

"Red Flags" written by Brittany Howard.

Related

[Play music on iPhone](#)

[Adjust the sound in Music on iPhone](#)

[Play music together using SharePlay on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Show song credits and lyrics](#)

Show song credits and lyrics on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In the Music app, show song credits and view and share lyrics.

When you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can show song credits and view and share lyrics.

Show song credits

You can view song credits that include performing artists, composition and lyrics, production and engineering roles, and available audio quality.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
 - While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Show Credits.
 - Tap  [Alt text: the More button] next to a song in a list, then tap Show Credits.

Show and hide time-synced lyrics

Time-synced lyrics appear for many songs in Apple Music.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen, then tap  [Alt text: the Lyrics button].

Tip: Tap a specific lyric—the first line of the chorus, for example—to go to that part of the song.
3. To see all of a song's lyrics, tap  [Alt text: the More button], tap Show Credits, then tap View Lyrics.
4. To hide the lyrics, tap  [Alt text: the Lyrics button].

Share lyrics

You can share up to 150 characters of a song's lyrics if time-synced lyrics are available.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Share Lyrics.

You can also touch and hold a lyrics line to open the sharing screen.

4. Tap the first and last lyrics you want to share, then choose a sharing option.

Report a concern

To report a concern about time-synced lyrics, touch and hold a lyrics line, then tap Report a Concern at the bottom of the screen.

Related

[Play music on iPhone](#)

[Adjust the sound in Music on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Tell Apple Music what you enjoy](#)

Tell Apple Music what you enjoy on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Music on iPhone, indicate songs or albums that you like (choose as favorites) and that you don't like (give a thumbs down).

You can make a song or album a favorite so that you can easily find and play it again later. If you dislike a song or album, you receive fewer suggestions for similar music.

Tell Apple Music what you enjoy

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
 - Touch and hold an album, playlist, or song, then tap Favorite or Suggest Less.
 - On the Now Playing screen, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Favorite or Suggest Less.

Telling Apple Music what you like and dislike improves future recommendations.

Rate music in your library

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Music.

2. Turn on Show Star Ratings.

This option appears only if you already have star ratings from a synced library on your device.

3. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A], touch and hold a song in your library, tap Rate Song, then choose a rating from one to five stars.

Song ratings sync to all devices that are signed in to the same Apple Account.

Related

[Play music on iPhone](#)

[Adjust the sound in Music on iPhone](#)

Organize songs in playlists

NAV TITLE: [Intro to playlists](#)

Intro to playlists in Music on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Music on iPhone, create playlists to organize a group of songs or music videos

A playlist is a custom compilation of songs and music videos. You might want to create a playlist to do the following:

- Suit a specific mood or occasion. For example, you could create a playlist for a dinner party, a wedding, or your morning workout.
- Select certain songs to share with others on your local network or to sync with your Mac or Windows device.
- Organize your music library.

When you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), there are a few other types of playlists available:

- *Favorite Songs playlist:* See [Mark items as favorites](#).
- *Playlists created by any Apple Music contributor:* See [Add music to iPhone and listen offline](#).
- *Playlists created by other subscribers that you follow:* See [See what your friends are listening to](#).

- *Special playlists (like Replay):* See the Apple Support article [How to get your Apple Music Replay](#).
- *Collaborative playlists:* See [Collaborate on a playlist](#) and [Join a collaborative playlist](#).

Changes you make to your music library (creating playlists, for example) are updated across all your devices when Sync Library is turned on (go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Music, then turn on Sync Library). If you're not an Apple Music subscriber, the changes appear in your library the next time you [sync with your computer](#).

NAV TITLE: [Create, edit, and delete playlists](#)

Create, edit, and delete music playlists on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Music on iPhone, create playlists of your favorite songs and videos. Remove playlists you no longer want.

You can create playlists to suit specific moods or to organize songs with a certain theme.

Create playlists to organize your music

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. To create a new playlist, tap Library, tap Playlists, then tap New Playlist.
3. To more easily identify the playlist later, enter a name and description.
4. To give your playlist cover art, tap  [Alt text: the Camera button], then take a photo or choose an image from your photo library.
5. Tap Create, then tap Add Music.

You can search for music, select music from your library, or choose songs listed at the bottom of the screen.

6. Tap  [Alt text: the Add button] to add music to the playlist.

Tip: If you want to add songs to your library when you add them to a playlist, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Music, then turn on Add Playlist Songs.

Add music to a playlist

After you create a playlist, you can add music to it in several ways.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:

- Touch and hold an album, playlist, song, or music video, tap Add to a Playlist, then choose a playlist.
- From the Now Playing screen, tap  [Alt text: the More button], tap Add to a Playlist, then choose a playlist.

Edit a playlist

You can rename playlists, change the artwork, add and remove songs, and more.

Note: The host of a [collaborative playlist](#) can make any changes to the playlist. People can only add, remove, and reorder songs in the playlist.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the playlist, tap  [Alt text: the More button], tap Edit, then do any of the following:
 - *Rename the playlist:* Tap the current name, then enter a new name.
 - *Edit cover art:* Select from a variety of Apple templates to use as cover art or tap  [Alt text: the Camera button] to add your own.
 - *Show (or hide) the playlist in your Apple Music profile:* Turn on (or off) the “Show in My Profile and in Search” option.
 - *Add songs from your library:* Tap  [Alt text: the Add button], navigate to any place in your library, then tap  [Alt text: the Add button] next to the song.

You can also touch and hold an item (song, album, playlist, or music video), tap Add to a Playlist, then choose a playlist.

- *Add a Suggested Song:* Tap  [Alt text: the Add button], scroll below the Library options, then tap  [Alt text: the Add button] next to the song.

Suggested Songs also appears at the bottom of your playlist song list. To refresh the list of suggestions, tap  [Alt text: the Refresh Suggested Songs button].

- *Delete a song:* Tap the song, then tap  [Alt text: the Delete button]. Deleting a song from a playlist doesn’t delete it from your library.
- *Change the song order:* Drag  [Alt text: the Reorder button] next to a song.

Changes you make to your music library are updated across all your devices when Sync Library is turned on (go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Music, then turn on Sync Library). If you’re not an Apple Music subscriber, the changes appear in your music library the next time you [sync with your computer](#).

Sort a playlist

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a playlist, then tap  [Alt text: the More button] at the top right of the screen.

3. Tap Sort By, then choose an option.

Delete a playlist

If you delete a playlist, the songs in the playlist remain in your library and on your iPhone. When you delete a collaborative playlist, the collaboration ends and the playlist is removed from both the host's and the other participants' libraries.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the playlist, then tap Delete from Library.

You can also tap the playlist, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Delete from Library.

Related

[Play music on iPhone](#)

[Adjust the sound in Music on iPhone](#)

Collaborate on playlists

NAV TITLE: [Collaborate on a playlist](#)

Collaborate on a playlist in Music on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Music on iPhone, collaborate on a playlist with others to share songs and reactions.

If you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can share a playlist and collaborate on it with others. Everyone can add, remove, and reorder music and react with emoji to songs in the [collaborative playlist](#).

Note: Apple Music isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Invite others to collaborate on a playlist

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a playlist, then tap  [Alt text: the Collaboration button].
3. To approve people before they can join, turn on Approve Collaborators.

If you don't turn on this option, anyone with the link can join the collaborative playlist.

4. Tap Start Collaborating, then choose a sharing method, such as AirDrop, Messages, or Mail, to send a link to the playlist.

The person who receives the link must tap Join Playlist to start collaborating.

If you're the host and you turn on Approve Collaborators, notifications appear in the top-right corner when a new person requests to join the collaborative playlist.

Add more people to collaborate on a playlist

If you're the host of a collaborative playlist, or the host hasn't turned on Approve Collaborators, you can share the link to the playlist with more people.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a collaborative playlist, tap  [Alt text: the Manage Collaboration button], then do one of the following:
 - *Add someone who is nearby:* Tap QR Code. Others can join the playlist by using the camera on their iPhone to scan the code displayed on your iPhone.
 - *Add someone else:* Tap "generate a new link" (if necessary), tap Share Invite Link, then follow the steps to [invite others to collaborate on a playlist](#).

Manage shared settings for a collaborative playlist

If you're the host, you can change access and permissions for individuals or for everyone after you've started collaborating on a playlist.

- COMMENT - #ba #music



[Alt text: The Manage Collaboration screen in the Music app.]

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a collaborative playlist, tap  [Alt text: the Manage Collaboration button] , then do any of the following:

- *Invite others:* See [Add more people to collaborate on a playlist.](#)

Note: If you didn't turn on Approve Collaborators, anyone collaborating on the playlist can share the link to the collaborative playlist.

- *Approve people before they can join:* Turn on Approve Collaborators.
- *Accept request:* Tap  [Alt text: the Accept Request button] to allow the person to join the collaborative playlist.

Tap Approve All to accept all requests at the same time.

- *Decline request:* Tap  [Alt text: the Decline Request button] if you don't want the person to join the collaborative playlist.

Stop collaborating on a playlist with one or more people

If you're the host, you can remove people from the playlist or stop collaborating on it altogether.

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a collaborative playlist, tap  [ALT text: the Manage Collaboration button], then do any of the following:
 - *Remove one person:* Swipe left on the person's name, then tap Remove.
 - *Stop collaborating on a playlist:* Tap Stop.

Remove yourself from a collaborative playlist

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a collaborative playlist, tap  [ALT text: the Manage Collaboration button], then tap Leave.

Related

[Create, edit, and delete music playlists on iPhone](#)

[Join a collaborative playlist in Music on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Join a collaborative playlist](#)

Join a collaborative playlist in Music on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Music on iPhone, join a collaborative playlist so you can share songs and react with emoji.

If you [subscribe to Apple Music](#) and someone invites you to collaborate on a playlist, you can join it and then add, remove, or reorder music in the [collaborative playlist](#) and react to songs with emoji.

Note: Apple Music isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

1. On your iPhone, tap the link you received, then tap Join or Request to Join (if approval by the collaborative playlist host is required).
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Add a song, change the order of songs, or remove an item:* See [Edit a playlist](#).
 - *React to a song with emoji:* See [Add a reaction to a collaborative playlist](#).
 - *Invite others with a link:* Tap Share Invite Link. See [Add more people to collaborate on a playlist](#).

Note: If you're the host of a collaborative playlist, or the host hasn't turned on Approve Collaborators, you can share the link.

Related

[Create, edit, and delete music playlists on iPhone](#)

[Collaborate on a playlist in Music on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Add a reaction to a collaborative playlist](#)

Add a reaction to a collaborative playlist in Music on iPhone

Metadata

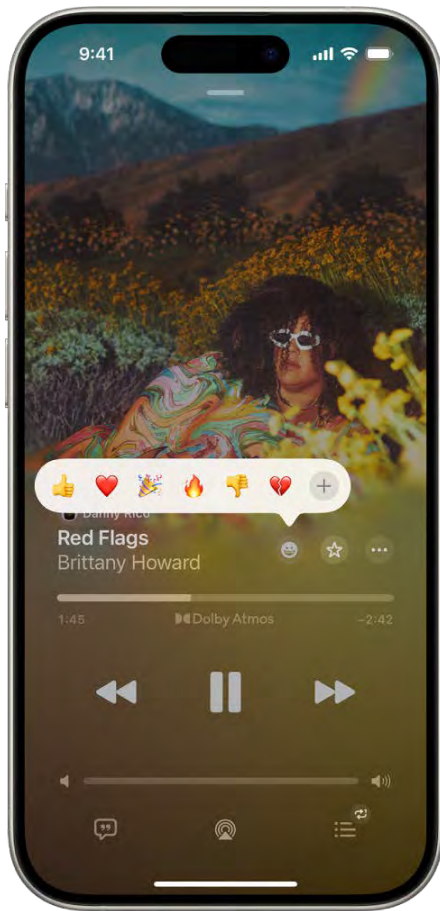
Summary: In Music on iPhone, after you join a collaborative playlist, you can react to songs with emoji.

If you [subscribe to Apple Music](#) and you join a [collaborative playlist](#), you can react to songs in the playlist with emoji.

Note: Apple Music isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

1. Go to the Music app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a collaborative playlist, then tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Reaction button], then choose a reaction (for example, a thumbs up emoji) or tap  [Alt text: the Add button] to find a specific emoji.

- COMMENT - #ba #music



[Alt text: The Now Playing screen with the Reactions button showing several emoji and an Add button that you can click to find more emoji.]

Related

[Create, edit, and delete music playlists on iPhone](#)

[Collaborate on a playlist in Music on iPhone](#)

News

NAV TITLE: [Get started with News](#)

Get started with News on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: With News on iPhone, collect all the stories you want to read, from your favorite sources, about the topics that interest you most.

The News app collects all the stories you want to read, from your favorite sources, about the topics that interest you most. To personalize News, you can choose from a selection of publications (called *channels*) and topics such as Entertainment, Food, and Science.

You need a Wi-Fi or cellular connection to view the latest News content. Apple News+ subscribers can access downloaded content in [Offline Mode](#), even without an internet connection.

The more you read, the better News understands your interests. Siri learns what's important to you and suggests stories you might like. You can receive notifications about important stories from channels you follow.

And you can [subscribe to Apple News+](#), which includes hundreds of magazines, popular newspapers, and premium digital publishers. Apple News+ subscribers can also listen to audio stories and solve daily crossword, crossword mini, and Quartiles puzzles.

Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Personalize your news

When you [follow a channel or topic](#), related stories appear more often in the Today feed, and the channel or topic appears in the Following tab.

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Following, then, below Suggested by Siri, tap  [Alt text: the Follow button] next to the channels and topics you want to follow.

To [make a channel or topic a favorite](#), tap Edit, then tap  [Alt text: the Add Favorite button] next to the channel or topic. It will appear in a group near the top of the Today feed.

If there's a channel or topic that you don't want to appear in your feed, touch and hold it, then choose Block Channel, Block Topic, or Stop Suggesting.

When you block a channel or topic, its stories don't appear in the Today feed and widgets. To see the channels and topics you've blocked, tap Following > Blocked Channels & Topics.

Note: When you browse Top Stories and other areas that feature stories curated by Apple News editors, stories from channels you blocked show a gray headline and a message indicating that you blocked the channel. See [Follow, unfollow, block, and unblock channels and topics](#).

3. Tap Discover Channels at the bottom of the screen, then tap  [Alt text: the Follow button] for each channel you want to follow.

To stop following a channel or topic, swipe it to the left, then tap Unfollow.

To quickly find specific channels and topics to follow, tap the search field at the top of the screen, enter the channel or topic's name, then tap  (Alt text: the Follow button) in the results below.

Get notifications

Some channels you follow may send notifications about important stories.

1. Go to the News app  (ALT N/A) on your iPhone.
2. Tap Following, swipe to the bottom of the screen, then tap Notifications & Email below Manage.
3. Turn on notifications for your preferred channels.
4. Turn on notifications from Apple News, such as Apple News Top Stories, Apple News Spotlight, and more.

If you subscribe to Apple News+, you can additionally receive notifications when new issues are available of publications you follow. You can also receive New Features & Tips notifications.

Receive Apple News newsletters

You can choose to receive newsletters in your email inbox from Apple News editors.

Newsletters feature top stories, personalized based on your interests. If you subscribe to Apple News+, newsletters can also include new issues of your favorite magazines.

1. Go to the News app  (ALT N/A) on your iPhone.
2. Tap Following, swipe to the bottom of the screen, then tap Notifications & Email.
3. Swipe to the bottom of the screen, then turn on Apple News Newsletters or tap Sign Up for Newsletters, then tap Sign Me Up.

In the U.S., several different newsletters may be available, and you can choose which ones you'd like to receive. Tap Sign Up to opt in, or Subscribed to opt out.

To stop receiving newsletters, return to the Notifications & Email screen, then turn off Apple News Newsletters. In the U.S., tap Manage Newsletters, then unsubscribe from each newsletter you no longer want to receive.

Note: Personalized newsletters aren't available in all countries or regions.

See stories only from the channels you follow

1. Go to Settings  (ALT N/A) > Apps > News.
2. Turn on Restrict Stories in Today, then confirm your choice.

Note: Restricting stories significantly limits the variety of stories that appear in the Today feed and all other feeds. For example, if you restrict stories and follow only one entertainment-

related channel, your Entertainment topic feed will contain stories only from that channel. When you restrict stories, you don't see Top Stories and Trending Stories.

Related

[Use News widgets on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use News widgets](#)

Use News widgets on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: See the day's top and trending news stories, as well as stories from a news topic of your choosing, in the Today and For You widgets on iPhone.

You can easily see the day's top and trending stories from the News app, as well as stories about a topic of your choosing, just by tapping the Today or Topic widget.

Access stories from News widgets

In the Today or Topic widget, tap a story headline to open the story in News.

See [Add, edit, and remove widgets](#).

Related

[See news stories chosen just for you on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [See news stories chosen just for you](#)

See news stories chosen just for you on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In News on iPhone, read stories selected just for you based on the channels and topics you follow, Siri suggestions, and trending news.

The Today feed in the News app presents top stories selected by Apple News editors, the best stories from the channels and topics you follow, and stories and issues from [Apple News+](#). The Today feed also includes stories suggested by Siri—trending stories that are popular with other News readers, [My Sports](#), and more. Depending on your location, the Today feed can also include Apple News Today audio briefings, [puzzles](#), and local news (with your local weather conditions).

Note: Apple News Today audio briefings, local news, and puzzles aren't available in all countries or regions.

Access stories in the Today feed

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
 - *Open a story:* Tap the story.
 - *Read more stories within a group:* Tap the arrow at the bottom of the group.
 - *Play a video:* Tap  [Alt text: the Play button] in the thumbnail.
 - *Get newer stories:* Pull down to refresh the Today feed with the latest stories.

Follow, unfollow, block, and unblock channels and topics

You can influence what appears in the Today feed by following and blocking channels and topics.

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Open a channel feed:* Touch and hold a story, tap the channel name, then tap Go to Channel. Or tap a story in the Today feed, then tap the channel name at the top of the story.
 - *Open a topic feed:* Tap the topic title—Movies or Travel, for example.
3. At the top of the feed, do any of the following:
 - *Follow:* Tap  [Alt text: the Follow button] .
 - *Unfollow:* Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Unfollow Channel or Unfollow Topic.
 - *Block:* Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Block Channel or Block Topic.
 - *Unblock:* Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Unblock Channel or Unblock Topic.

Note: When you browse Top Stories and other areas that feature stories curated by Apple News editors, stories from channels you blocked show a gray headline and a message indicating that you blocked the channel. To read a story from a blocked channel, tap it, then tap Read Story.

See the Apple Support article [Block and unblock channels and topics in Apple News](#).

Manage your favorites

Favorites shows the channels and topics from your Following list that you like best (you can have only a limited number of Favorites). Adding channels and topics to your Favorites makes them quicker and easier to access.

Note: Only channels and topics that you currently follow can be added to your Favorites.

The first time you use the News app on your iPhone, you won't see any Favorites. You create your Favorites group by marking channels and topics as favorites. You can customize your list at any time.

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Following, tap Edit, then do any of the following:
 - *Add a channel or topic to your Favorites:* Tap  [Alt text: the Add Favorite button] next to a channel or topic to mark it as a favorite, then tap Done.
 - *Remove a favorite:* Tap  [Alt text: the Remove Favorite button] next to a channel or topic you no longer want as a favorite, then tap Done.
 - *Reorder favorites:* Touch and hold  [Alt text: the Reorder button], drag favorites to the order you prefer, then tap Done,

You can also swipe up to Favorites in the Today feed, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Manage Favorites.

To remove the Favorites group from your Today feed, swipe up to Favorites, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Block from Today. To unblock Favorites, tap Following, swipe up, tap Blocked Channels & Topics, tap  [Alt text: the Unfollow button] next to Favorites, then tap Unblock.

Note: If you tap Block from Today in the Today feed, your Favorites group still appears in your Following list.

Stop suggesting specific channels and topic groups in the Today feed

Suggested channels and topic groups may appear in the Today feed, but you can stop these suggestions.

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Today.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] in a channel or topic group, then tap Stop Suggesting.

The channel or topic isn't blocked, but News stops displaying the story group in Today.

Tell News what kind of stories you prefer

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Today.
3. Tap ... [Alt text: the More button] below a headline, then tap Suggest More or Suggest Less.

Related

[Read and share stories in News on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Read and share stories](#)

Read and share stories in News on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Read and share the stories in News on iPhone.

You can read and share News stories on iPhone.

- COMMENT - #ba #news



[Alt text: A news story in the News app. In the tabs across the bottom, Today is selected.]

Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions.

Read a story

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a story to read it. While viewing a story, you have these options:
 - *Read the next story:* Swipe left.
 - *Read the previous story:* Swipe right.
 - *Return to the list of stories:* Swipe from the left edge or tap  [Alt text: the Back button] at the top left of the screen.
 - *Tell News what stories you prefer:* When viewing a story, tap  [Alt text: the Suggest More/Suggest Less button], then choose Suggest More or Suggest Less. Your feedback is taken into account for future recommendations.

- *Change the text size:* Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , tap Text Size, then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story and all other stories in the channel. (Not available in all channels.)
- *Share a story:* Tap  [Alt text: the Share button] , then choose a sharing option, such as Messages or Mail.
- *Report a concern:* If you believe that a story you're viewing is mislabeled, inappropriate, offensive, or doesn't display properly, tap  [Alt text: the More button] , tap Report a Concern, then choose a concern.

In Apple News+ issues in PDF format, the Suggest More, Suggest Less, Save Story, and Report a Concern options aren't available. See [Browse and read Apple News+ stories and issues](#).

Read stories shared with you

When a friend [shares stories with you using the Messages app](#), you can easily find them in the Shared with You section in Apple News. (Your friend must be in your contacts list in Contacts.)

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Messages.
2. Tap Shared with You, then make sure News is turned on.
3. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
4. Tap Following.
5. Tap Shared with You, then do any of the following:
 - Tap a shared story to read it in News.
 - Tap the name of the person who shared a story to reply to them in the Messages app. You can also reply while reading the story—tap the name shown below the channel's logo.

Related

[Follow your favorite teams with My Sports on iPhone](#)
[Customize sharing options in an iPhone app](#)

NAV TITLE: [Follow your favorite teams with My Sports](#)

Follow your favorite teams with My Sports on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In News on iPhone, follow your favorite sports topics with My Sports. Receive stories from top sports publishers, and access scores, schedules, and more.

With My Sports, you can follow your favorite sports, teams, leagues, and athletes; receive stories from top sports publications, local newspapers, and more; access scores, schedules, and standings for the top professional and college leagues; and watch highlights.

Set up iPhone to use My Sports

Before you can use My Sports, you must do the following:

- *Sign in to your Apple Account:* Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] , tap “Sign in to your iPhone,” then enter your Apple Account information.
- *Sign in to the App Store:* Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name], then tap Media & Purchases.

Get started with My Sports

Before you can use My Sports, you must allow syncing between Apple News and the Apple TV app. When you allow syncing, teams you follow in News are followed automatically in the Apple TV app, and vice versa.

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sports at the bottom of the screen, tap Get Started, then tap Pick Your Teams.
3. On the Manage My Sports screen, tap  [Alt text: the Follow button] next to sports, teams, leagues, and major sporting events to follow them.

Sports topics you’ve previously expressed interest in appear below Suggested.
4. To search for a sports topic, tap the search field, enter a search term such as a team’s name or location, tap  [Alt text: the Follow button] next to a result, then tap Done.

View sports coverage

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sports at the bottom of the screen to view comprehensive sports coverage.

Note: To see the most important sports coverage at a glance, tap Today, then swipe up to the Sports group.

You can also find the sports topics you follow in the Following tab below My Sports.

Browse all available sports

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sports, then tap All Sports at the top of the screen.
3. Tap a sport or league to go to its feed.
4. To follow that sport or league, tap  [Alt text: the Follow button] at the top of the screen.

Manage sports topics

You can follow and unfollow sports topics after you've set up My Sports.

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sports, tap  [Alt text: the More button] at the top right, then tap Manage My Sports, then do any of the following:
 - *Follow topics:* Tap  [Alt text: the Follow button] next to each topic you want to follow, then tap Done.
 - *Unfollow topics:* Tap  [Alt text: the Unfollow button] next to topics you want to unfollow, tap Unfollow, then tap Done.
 - *Reorder topics:* Touch and hold  [Alt text: the Reorder button], drag topics to the order you prefer, then tap Done.

Show scores and schedules, highlights, and more

My Sports offers scores and schedules for your favorite teams, stats and stories for individual games and events, video highlights, and stories related to your favorite teams.

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sports, then do any of the following:
 - *Show scores and schedules:* Swipe left on the scores at the top of the feed, then tap See More.
 - *Show stats and stories for individual games:* Tap a score at the top of the feed, or swipe down to a sports topics you follow, then tap a game.
 - *Watch a live game:* Tap a score at the top of the feed, then tap Open in Apple TV (before or after the game) or Watch on Apple TV (during a live game). Or swipe down to a topic you follow, tap the game's tile, then tap Open in Apple TV or Watch on Apple TV. If the game is available in your area and you've subscribed to a service that broadcasts the game, you can watch it in the Apple TV app or in a supported app.

Note: Supported sports apps may require a separate subscription. Not all games are available in all areas.
 - *View highlights:* Swipe up to the Highlights section, then tap  [Alt text: the Play button] in the thumbnail. Tap  [Alt text: the right arrow button] to see more highlights.

Note: Highlights are available only for select leagues.
 - *Read sports stories related to topics you follow:* Swipe up to For You, then tap a story.

Get Sports notifications

Receive notifications about teams you follow.

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Following, swipe to the bottom of the screen, then tap Notifications & Email below Manage.
3. Turn on notifications for Sports.

Note: To receive Sports notifications, you must allow syncing between Apple News and the Apple TV app, and follow at least one sports topic.

Remove the Sports group from Today

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In Today, swipe up to Sports, then tap  [Alt text: the More button] .
3. Tap Block from Today.

When you block Sports, the group no longer appears in your Today feed.

Stop syncing My Sports

You can stop syncing between Apple News and the Apple TV app.

Note: When you turn off Sync My Sports, you can no longer use My Sports.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > News.
2. Turn off Sync My Sports.

Related

[Listen to Apple News Today on iPhone](#)

[Apple Sports App User Guide](#)

[Apple TV User Guide: Sports in the Apple TV app](#)

NAV TITLE: [Listen to Apple News Today](#)

Listen to Apple News Today on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, you can listen to Apple News Today, an audio briefing of the day's top stories.

You can listen to Apple News Today, an audio briefing of the day's top stories hosted by Apple News editors. [With an Apple News+ subscription](#), you can also listen to audio versions of select Apple News+ stories in the News app and in the [Podcasts app](#).

Note: Apple News, Apple News+, and the audio feature aren't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Play Apple News Today

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Audio button] , then tap an episode of Apple News Today.
Apple News Today briefings also appear in the Today feed below Listen Now.
3. For more audio controls, tap the mini player at the bottom to open the full-screen player.
See [Listen to audio stories](#).
4. To return to the mini player, swipe down to minimize the full-screen player.
To close the full-screen player, tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Close Audio Player. To close the mini player, tap  [Alt text: the Close button] .

If you're not an Apple News+ subscriber, a preview of an Apple News+ audio story plays when the briefing concludes.

Get Apple News Today show notes notifications

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Following, swipe to the bottom of the screen, then tap Notifications & Email below Manage.
3. Turn on notifications for Apple News Today.

Related

[Subscribe to Apple News+ on iPhone](#)

Apple News+

NAV TITLE: [Subscribe to Apple News+](#)

Subscribe to Apple News+ on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Subscribe to Apple News+ on iPhone, a service you can use to read hundreds of magazines, popular newspapers, and content from premium digital publishers.

In the News app, Apple News+ lets you enjoy hundreds of magazines, popular newspapers, and content from premium digital publishers directly on your iPhone.

You can subscribe to Apple News+ or to Apple One Premier, which includes Apple News+ and other Apple services. See the Apple Support article [Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One](#).

As a subscriber, when you tap Best of News+ in the News+ tab, you can browse a collection of story headlines and publications personalized just for you. You also have access to current and available back issues of publications, can listen to audio stories, and can download content for offline reading and share stories and issues with others. Additionally, you can solve crossword, crossword mini, and Quartiles puzzles.

As a nonsubscriber, you can browse, but not read, the stories and publications that appear when you tap Best of News+. You can also view the entire Apple News+ catalog, and browse issues by category—Entertainment and Food, for example. Nonsubscribers may also be able to play a few puzzles for free and listen to short previews of audio stories. To read stories and issues, listen to complete Apple News+ audio stories, and play daily puzzles, start a free trial or subscribe.

Note: Apple News, Apple News+, Apple One, puzzles, and the audio feature aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Subscribe to Apple News+

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the subscription button shown in a magazine, puzzle, or story in News, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You may be asked to sign in to your Apple Account.

Share Apple News+ with family members

When you subscribe to Apple News+ or Apple One Premier, you can [use Family Sharing](#) to share Apple News+ with up to five other family members. Your family group members don't need to do anything—Apple News+ is available to them the first time they open the News app after your subscription begins.

If you [join a family group](#) that subscribes to Apple News+ or Apple One Premier, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing Apple News+ with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, [leave a Family Sharing group](#), or [remove a member from a Family Sharing group](#).

Cancel or change your Apple News+ subscription

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Following, swipe up, tap Subscriptions below Manage, then do one of the following:
 - *Apple News+ only:* Tap Cancel Subscription, then follow the onscreen instructions.

- *Apple News+ and individual channels:* Select Apple News+, tap Cancel Subscription, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you subscribe to Apple News+ as part of an Apple One Premier subscription and want to cancel your subscription, see the Apple Support article [If you want to cancel a subscription from Apple](#).

Related

[Browse and read Apple News+ stories and issues on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Browse and read Apple News+ stories](#)

Browse and read Apple News+ stories and issues on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: To get the most out of Apple News+ on iPhone, follow your favorite publications, then read as you browse.

To get the most out of Apple News+, follow your favorite publications and browse through current and back issues.

Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Follow and unfollow publications

You follow an Apple News+ publication by following its channel.

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
 - Tap Today or News+ at the bottom of the screen, tap a story or issue from an Apple News+ publication, tap the publication's name at the top of the screen, then tap  [Alt text: the Follow button] .
 - Tap Following, enter the publication's name in the search field, then tap  [Alt text: the Follow button] .
 - Tap News+, swipe left on the categories near the top of the screen, tap Newspapers or Catalog, then tap Follow below the publication's cover.

To unfollow a publication, tap Following, swipe left, then tap Unfollow.

Browse Apple News+ issues and stories

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

Stories and issues from Apple News+ appear in the Today feed, Best of News+ feed, and channel feeds. Stories (but not issues) can also be found in topic feeds and search results.

2. To access entire issues, tap the News+ tab at the bottom of the screen, where you can do any of the following:
 - *View News+ content chosen just for you:* Near the top of the screen, tap Best of News+.
 - *View all available publications:* Near the top of the screen, swipe the options left, then tap Catalog.
 - *View a specific content category:* Swipe left on the options near the top of the screen, tap Catalog, tap Featured, then tap a category such as Money & Business, Entertainment, or Sports.
 - *View new and recent issues:* Tap News+, then tap My Magazines. By default, new issues appear near the top of the screen. The issue you've most recently read appears first. If you've recently downloaded an issue, it appears next. To choose a different sorting option, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Sort by Name or Sort by Date.

Note: If you block an Apple News+ publication, its issues are removed from My Magazines.

Open a story or issue

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
 - Tap an issue cover in News+ or the Today feed.
 - Tap Following, enter the name of the Apple News+ channel in the search field, tap the channel, then tap the issue.
 - Follow a link to a story or issue that someone shared with you.

Access back issues

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
 - Tap News+, tap My Magazines, tap  [Alt text: the More button] below the issue cover (or touch and hold the cover), then tap Browse Back Catalog.
 - Tap a channel you follow, or search for a channel, then tap it. Below Recent Issues, swipe to the issue you want to read, then tap to open it. Tap Issues near the top of the screen to browse all available issues.

Read Apple News+ issues

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Open the issue, where you can do any of the following:

- *View the table of contents:* Tap the cover thumbnail at the bottom left of the screen.
- *Navigate to a story:* In an issue in Apple News Format, tap the story link in the table of contents. In a PDF issue, tap the thumbnail of the page you want to view.
- *Page through an issue:* Swipe left to go to the next story, or swipe right to go to the previous story.
- *Change the text size:* In stories in Apple News Format, tap  [Alt text: the More button] , choose Text Size, then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story and all other stories in the channel. In PDF issues, pinch to zoom.

If you sign out in Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > Media & Purchases, you can only access free stories—you must sign back in to access stories and download issues that require an Apple News+ subscription.

- COMMENT - #ba #news



[Alt text: A magazine story from Apple News+, with a thumbnail image of the magazine in the lower-left corner and tabs across the bottom (showing News+ selected).

Related

[Use Offline Mode to read downloaded News content on iPhone](#)

[Manually download Apple News+ issues on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use Offline Mode to read downloaded News content](#)

Use Offline Mode to read downloaded News content on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Apple News+ subscribers can download News content automatically to access it later, even when there's no Wi-Fi or cellular connection.

Apple News+ subscribers can automatically download News content, then access it when there's no Wi-Fi or cellular connection—for example, when taking a flight or riding the subway.

Note: Content that can be downloaded for Offline Mode may include stories, issues, audio stories, and puzzles. Not all content types are available in all countries and regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Turn on Automatic Downloads for Apple News+

1. [Sign in to your Apple Account](#).
2. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > News.
3. Turn on Background App Refresh.
4. Tap Automatic Downloads, turn on Allow Automatic Downloads, then turn on any of the following:
 - *Recent Stories*: Downloads the latest stories in the Today feed, Best of News+ feed, Sports feed, Shared with You, and History.
 - *Saved Stories*: Downloads the latest stories in your Saved Stories list.
 - *Magazine Issues*: Downloads the latest issues of magazines you follow.
 - *Puzzles*: Downloads the Puzzles feed, the feed for each puzzle type, and the puzzles in these feeds.
 - *Audio Stories*: Downloads audio stories in the Today feed and Audio tab.

Note: To download smaller versions of images in stories, turn on Optimize Storage.

Your iPhone downloads News content when it has sufficient storage space and is connected to Wi-Fi and power. If you have a cellular connection but not Wi-Fi, only Top Stories in the Today feed are downloaded automatically.

Use News in Offline Mode

If you don't have a Wi-Fi or cellular connection, No Internet Connection appears at the top of the screen and any content in the app that isn't downloaded is dimmed. To switch from the currently loaded version of each feed to the downloaded version, tap Show Stories Downloaded for Offline Mode.

When you reconnect to the internet, tap Check for New Stories at the top of the screen. All feeds in the app are refreshed and display the latest content.

Related

[Manually download Apple News+ issues on iPhone](#)

[Browse and read Apple News+ stories and issues on iPhone](#)

[Connect iPhone to the internet](#)

NAV TITLE: [Manually download Apple News+ issues](#)

Manually download Apple News+ issues on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: With an Apple News+ subscription, you can manually download issues to read later.

With the News app and an Apple News+ subscription, you can download issues to read later.

Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Download an Apple News+ issue

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
 - Tap Today, then swipe to My Magazines.
 - Tap News+, then tap My Magazines. You can also tap Catalog near the top of the screen, then tap a stack of magazines.
 - Tap Following, then tap a magazine channel you follow.
 - Tap Following, enter the magazine channel name in the search field, then tap the channel.
3. When you find the issue you want, tap ... [Alt text: the More button] below the issue cover (or touch and hold the cover), then tap Download Issue.

To download multiple issues, tap My Magazines, tap  [Alt text: the More button] , tap Select, tap the issues you want to download, then tap  [Alt text: the Download button] .

Read a downloaded issue

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the News+ tab.
3. Tap Downloaded near the top of the screen, then tap an issue.

Remove issues

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the News+ tab, then tap Downloaded near the top of the screen.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , tap Select, tap the issues you want to remove, then tap  [Alt text: the Delete button] .

If you remove an issue from the Downloaded tab, its cover remains in My Magazines so you can easily access the issue again.

To remove all downloaded issues, tap Following > History, tap Clear, then tap Clear All.

Remove an issue from My Magazines

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap My Magazines near the top of the screen.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] below the issue cover (or touch and hold the cover), tap Remove, then tap Remove from My Magazines.

The issue's cover and content are removed from iPhone and from any other devices where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) and where News is turned on in iCloud settings.

Related

[Listen to News stories in News on iPhone](#)

[Use Offline Mode to read downloaded News content on iPhone](#)

[See news stories chosen just for you on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Listen to News stories](#)

Listen to News stories in News on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: If you subscribe to Apple News+, you can listen to audio versions of select stories on iPhone.

If you subscribe to Apple News+, you can listen to audio versions of select News+ stories. You can also listen to select Apple News+ audio stories [in the Podcasts app](#).

Note: Apple News, Apple News+, and the audio feature aren't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Browse audio stories

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Audio button] to show Apple News+ audio stories and Apple News Today. If you're a subscriber, you have access to the following:
 - *Editors' Picks*: Features audio stories chosen by the Apple News editors as well as the latest episodes of Apple News Today and Apple News In Conversation.
 - *Up Next*: Stories you're currently listening to or have added to the Up Next queue.
 - *For You*: Stories recommended to you based on your interests.
 - *Story groups*: Dynamic collections of stories curated by the Apple News editors, based on a topic or theme, such as space exploration or stories to accompany your commute.
 - *More to Explore*: Links to all audio stories, Apple News Today episodes, recently played stories, and story categories such as Arts & Entertainment, News & Politics, and Sports.

To learn more about a story before listening to it, tap See Details.

If you're not an Apple News+ subscriber, you can hear previews of audio stories in Editors' Picks, Audio Stories For You, and in story groups. You can also listen to full episodes of Apple News Today and Apple News In Conversation.

Play audio stories

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Audio button], then tap a story.
3. For more playback controls, tap the mini player at the bottom to open the full-screen player.
4. To return to the mini player, swipe down to minimize the full-screen player.

To close the full-screen player, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Close Audio Player. To close the mini player, tap  [Alt text: the Close button].

- COMMENT - #ba #news



[Alt text: The Audio Player screen showing an audio story, with below it player controls and a volume slider.]

Audio stories can also appear in a feed. To listen to the story, tap Play Now (Apple News+ subscription required). You can also tap the story to read it, then tap Play Now at the top of the story.

Use any of the following controls:

(table aria-label=Playback controls)

Control	Description
 [Alt text: The Play button.]	Play
 [Alt text: The Pause button.]	Pause
 [Alt text: The Next Story button.]	Next story



Jump back 15 seconds

[Alt text: The 15 Seconds Rewind button.]



Choose a faster or slower playback speed

[Alt text: The Playback Speed button.]



[Stream audio to other devices](#)

[Alt text: The Playback Destination button.]



Choose more actions such as place a story next or last in the queue, read a story, or share it

[Alt text: The More button.]

Add stories to Up Next

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
 - In the Audio tab or a news feed, tap ... [Alt text: the More button] , then choose Play Next or Play Last.
 - At the top of a story, touch and hold Play Now, then choose Play Next or Play Last.

To continue listening from your most recent reading or listening position, tap Play Next from Here or Play Last from Here.

To reorder stories in the queue, tap See All, touch and hold  [Alt text: the Reorder button] , then drag stories to the order you prefer.

Read, share, and remove audio stories

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Read, save, share, and more:* Tap ... [Alt text: the More button] , then choose an option.
 - *Remove stories from the Up Next queue or For You:* Touch and hold the story, then select Remove.

Note: Some of these options are also available when you swipe a story left or right.

When listening to a story, open the full-screen player, then tap ... [Alt text: the More button] to see a list of similar options.

Related

[Find puzzles in Apple News+ on iPhone](#)
[Customize sharing options in an iPhone app](#)

Puzzles

NAV TITLE: [Find puzzles in Apple News+](#)

Find puzzles in Apple News+ on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Apple News+ subscribers can access daily and archived crossword, crossword mini, and Quartiles puzzles.

Apple News+ subscribers can access daily and archived crossword, crossword mini, and Quartiles puzzles. Some puzzles may be available without a subscription.

Note: Apple News, Apple News+, and puzzles aren't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

View the Puzzles feed

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
 - Tap Following, then tap Puzzles.
 - Tap Today, scroll down, then tap the Puzzles group.

Follow the feed for a puzzle type

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open the Puzzles feed.
3. Tap Crossword, Mini, or Quartiles.
4. Tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Follow.

A Puzzles category appears in Following, with the puzzle types appearing below. To make them favorites, tap Edit, tap  [Alt text: the Add Favorite button] next to a puzzle type, then tap Done.

Choose a puzzle

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Go to one of the following areas to find a puzzle:

- The Puzzles group in the Today feed or Best of News+ feed
- The Puzzles feed
- The feed for a puzzle type (crossword, crossword mini, or Quartiles)

3. Tap a puzzle to open it.

Crossword puzzles have a difficulty rating—easy, moderate, or challenging.

You can also solve puzzles from the archive. See [View past puzzles](#), below.

View puzzle stats and streaks

In each puzzle feed you can find the Scoreboard. It includes:

- Statistics for each puzzle type—the number of puzzles solved, for example
- Your current streak—the number of consecutive days you’ve solved the daily puzzle
- Your longest streak

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Choose the feed for a puzzle type, then swipe up.

Conditions that affect stats include the following:

- If you use the Reveal command to show all or a portion of a puzzle, the puzzle won’t count toward your stats, and completing the puzzle won’t start or continue a streak.
- Puzzles you complete on a device with iOS 17.5, iPadOS 17.5, macOS 14.5, or later, count toward your stats. Any puzzles you played on older OS versions don’t count toward your stats.
- After you open the News app on a device with iOS 17.5, iPadOS 17.5, macOS 14.5, or later, any daily puzzles you complete on a device with an earlier version of the OS are added to your streak. For example, if you complete Monday’s crossword and Tuesday’s crossword on your iPhone with iOS 17.5, and then solve Wednesday’s crossword on your iPad with iPadOS 17.4, your streak is extended.
- Users in the continental U.S. and Canada must complete a puzzle within 24 hours of its publication for it to count toward a streak. Users in Alaska and Hawaii get an extra hour or two; they must complete the day’s puzzle before midnight local time.

Compete with others in Game Center

You can compete against friends and other puzzle solvers in [Game Center](#).

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Game Center.

2. Turn on Game Center, then [sign in to your Apple Account](#).

3. Go to Settings > Apps > News.

4. Turn on Game Center.

Your score for the daily puzzle is submitted to the leaderboard for that puzzle type in Game Center. Your score for crossword and crossword mini puzzles is the time it took you to solve the puzzle. For Quartiles, your score is the number of points you've earned.

View past puzzles

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *View puzzles from the archive:* Open a puzzle feed, then swipe up to view the most recent puzzles in the archive.
 - *View the complete crossword and crossword mini puzzle archive:* Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle feed, swipe up, then tap  [Alt text: the Right Arrow button] next to Archive. You can also tap  [Alt text: the More button], then choose Crossword Archive or Crossword Mini Archive.

To show sorting and filtering options for the archive, tap  [Alt text: the Filter button]. You can sort all archives from newest to oldest or oldest to newest. You can filter the crossword archive by completeness and difficulty level. You can filter the crossword mini archive by completeness only.

Get Puzzles notifications

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Following, swipe to the bottom of the screen, then tap Notifications & Email below Manage.
3. Turn on notifications for Puzzles.

Remove the Puzzles group from Today

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In Today, swipe up to Puzzles, then tap  [Alt text: the More button].
3. Tap Block from Today.

When you block Latest Puzzles, the group no longer appears in your Today feed.

Related

[Solve crossword and crossword mini puzzles on iPhone](#)

[Solve Quartiles puzzles](#)

[Subscribe to Apple News+ on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Solve crossword and crossword mini puzzles](#)

Solve crossword and crossword mini puzzles on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Navigate and solve the News app's crossword and crossword mini puzzles.

Apple News+ offers subscribers a new crossword and crossword mini puzzle every day. Crossword puzzles start out easy but get increasingly challenging as the week goes on. When you want a puzzle you can solve in next to no time, try an always-easy crossword mini puzzle.

You can navigate and solve crossword and crossword mini puzzles in multiple ways. For example, you can display puzzles in the traditional grid view, or instead choose to show clues and answers in a list. You can tap squares to select words, or hide the keyboard and choose clues from a list.

You don't have to solve puzzles all at once; you can return at any time. The timer pauses while you're away.

Note: Apple News, Apple News+, and puzzles aren't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Solve in grid view

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap a square to show the clue below the puzzle, then use the keyboard to enter the answer. You move to other squares as you type. You can also tap < or > next to the clue to move to the previous or next clue.

With the keyboard showing, switch from across to down, or vice versa, by tapping the selected square again or tapping the clue.

To hide the keyboard and show a scrollable list of all the clues, tap  [Alt text: the Hide Keyboard button]. Tap a clue to show the keyboard and select the corresponding answer in the grid.



[Alt text: A partially filled crossword puzzle, with controls above and below it, and a keyboard open at the bottom.]

Solve in list view

You can show clues and answers in a list rather than in the traditional grid.

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
 2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
 3. Tap  [Alt text: the List View button] .
 4. Tap Across or Down to switch to the crossing set of clues.
- Tap  [Alt text: the Grid View button] to return to grid view.



[Alt text: A partially filled crossword puzzle in list view, and a keyboard open at the bottom.]

Get hints and answers

If you're unsure of an answer you entered, you can get a little help.

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Puzzles Options button], then do any of the following:
 - *Mark incorrect answers:* Tap Autocheck, Check Square, Check Word, or Check Puzzle.
 - *Reveal answers:* Tap Reveal, then tap Square, Word, or Puzzle to display the correct answer.

Note: When you reveal all or a portion of a puzzle, it's not counted toward stats in your Scoreboard or as part of a streak.

Some puzzles have clues that reference other clues. You can highlight these connections. Tap

 [Alt text: the More button] , then turn on Highlight Linked Clues.

Always use Autocheck

When you turn on Autocheck inside a puzzle, it stays on for only that puzzle unless you turn on Always Autocheck.

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button], choose Settings, then turn on Always Autocheck.
4. Tap  [Alt text: the Puzzles Options button], then choose Autocheck.

Autocheck stays on for all puzzles of that type until you turn it off.

Restart your puzzle

If you'd like a fresh start, you can clear a puzzle's answers and reset the timer.

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Puzzles Options button].
4. Tap Clear Puzzle.

Change how you move around the puzzle

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button], then change any of the following settings:
 - *Skip Filled Squares*: By default, after entering a letter, the next empty square in the puzzle is selected. Turn this setting off to select the square to the right or the square below, whether or not it's filled.
 - *At End of Word*: Choose Advance If Complete, Always Advance, or Don't Advance.



[Alt text: A partially filled mini crossword puzzle, with a keyboard open at the bottom.]

Show or hide the timer

You can show or hide the timer that appears above your puzzle.

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Do one of the following:
 - Tap  [Alt text: the Timer button] .
 - Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Show Timer or Hide Timer.

Share your puzzle

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Share.
4. Choose Messages, Mail, or another way to share your puzzle.

Related

[Find puzzles in Apple News+ on iPhone](#)

[Solve Quartiles puzzles](#)

[Customize sharing options in an iPhone app](#)

Solve Quartiles puzzles

Metadata

Summary: Apple News+ subscribers can solve Quartiles puzzles.

Apple News+ subscribers can solve Quartiles puzzles. Players select tiles containing two to four letters from a four-by-five grid to form words. You can use up to four tiles per word, and the more tiles you use, the more points you score.

A word formed from four tiles is called a Quartile and is worth 8 points. When you find all five Quartiles, you receive an additional 40 points.

The object of the game is to earn the 100 points necessary to reach the Expert rank. You can continue forming words and accumulating points even after you've reached Expert.

Note: Apple News, Apple News+, and puzzles aren't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).



[Alt text: The Quartiles game, showing the player's score, rank, and progress to the next rank. A list includes words found in a grid of 20 tiles—a few 8-point, four-tile words and several others with their corresponding point values.]

Play Quartiles

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a Quartiles puzzle.
3. Tap tiles to create a word, then tap  [Alt text: the Enter button] to enter it.

For example, to score a single point, tap “pear,” then tap  [Alt text: the Enter button]. To score 2 points, tap “ap,” then “pear” to form the word, “appear.” Go for 4 points by tapping “ap,” “pear,” then “ance.” Complete the Quartile and score 8 points by spelling “disappearance.”

Completed words appear in the Words Found box.

Not all possible words qualify in Quartiles puzzles. For example, obscure and technical terms, proper nouns, and profanity never appear in the word list.

4. Do any of the following:

- *Reorder your tiles:* After you tap the tiles to place them above the grid, you can touch and hold, then drag to reorder them.
- *See points needed to move to the next rank:* Tap Next Rank.
- *Clear tiles you don't want to use:* Tap  [Alt text: the Remove button] .
- *See how many words remain:* When you reach the Expert rank, the Words Found box shows how many words you haven't found.
- *See each word's points:* Tap  [Alt text: the Expand button] in the Words Found box.

Tip: Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap How to Play to take a quick Quarters tutorial, or tap More Puzzles to open the Quarters puzzle feed.

Shuffle or group tiles

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a Quarters puzzle and start finding words.
3. Quarters you find are anchored to the bottom of the grid. If you'd rather anchor them to the top of the grid, tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then choose Sort Found Quarters.
4. Tap  [Alt text: the Shuffle button] to shuffle tiles that aren't part of found Quarters.
5. To shuffle all tiles in the grid, tap  [Alt text: the Arrangement button] to turn off anchoring, then tap  [Alt text: the Shuffle button] .

Reveal all words

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a Quarters puzzle.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Reveal All Words. The words you didn't find are shown.
 - *If you reveal before you reach Expert rank:* The puzzle doesn't count in your Scoreboard stats and streaks.
 - *If you reveal after you reach Expert rank:* Your stats or streaks aren't affected.

Share a puzzle

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a Quarters puzzle.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Share button] , then choose a sharing method to share a Quarters puzzle with another Apple News+ subscriber.

Your rank appears in the email or message you send, and anyone opening the puzzle doesn't see your answers.

Related

[Find puzzles in Apple News+ on iPhone](#)

[Solve crossword and crossword mini puzzles on iPhone](#)

[Customize sharing options in an iPhone app](#)

NAV TITLE: [Search for stories in News](#)

Search for stories in News on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In News on iPhone, search to find stories that interest you most.

The News app keeps track of a wide variety of channels, topics, and stories, which makes it easy to find content that interests you.

Search for channels, topics, or stories

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Following, then tap the search field.
3. Enter any of the following:
 - The name of a channel, such as Scientific American or Washington Post
 - A topic, such as fashion, business, or politics
 - An event, such as an upcoming meteor shower

In the results list, tap  [Alt text: the Follow button] to follow the channel or topic.

Related

[Save stories in News on iPhone](#)

[Get started with News on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Save stories in News](#)

Save stories in News on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In News on iPhone, save stories to read later.

You can save news stories to read later. Apple News+ subscribers can read saved stories in [Offline Mode](#).

Save a story

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. When reading a story, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Save Story.

Read a saved story

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Following, tap Saved Stories, then tap the story.

Delete a saved story

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Following, tap Saved Stories, then do one of the following:
 - *Delete one story:* Swipe the story left.
 - *Remove all saved stories:* Tap Clear.

Related

[Search for stories in News on iPhone](#)

[How to subscribe to individual channels in News on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Clear your reading history in News](#)

Clear your reading history in News on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In News on iPhone, check your reading history and reset the identifier related to your subscription and reading recommendations.

In the News app, you can clear your reading history and adjust how you get reading recommendations.

Clear your history

1. Go to the News app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Following, tap History, tap Clear, then do any of the following:

- *Remove your reading history:* Tap Clear History.
- *Remove information used to recommend stories:* Tap Clear Recommendations.

Choosing this option can change the types of channels, topics, and stories shown in the Today and other feeds in Apple News on all your Apple devices.

- *Remove your history, recommendations, and downloaded content:* Tap Clear All.

Your News history and recommendation information are removed from all devices where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#). Downloaded content is removed from this iPhone only.

When you clear your history, the identifier used by Apple News to report statistics to news publishers is also reset. You can reset the identifier at any time by going to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > News, then turning on Reset Identifier.

Recommend stories based on News app reading only

When you turn off Siri & Search for the News app, recommendations are based on your reading habits in the News app only, not in Safari and other apps.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > News.
2. Tap Siri & Search, then turn off Show in App.

Related

[Search for stories in News on iPhone](#)

[How to subscribe to individual channels in News on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Subscribe to individual news channels](#)

How to subscribe to individual channels in News on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In News on iPhone, subscribe to and read stories from select publications.

In addition to [subscribing to Apple News+](#), you can subscribe to individual publications from select publishers. There are three ways to access these subscriptions in News:

- *Subscribe within News:* You can purchase a subscription directly in News. In a channel that offers subscriptions, tap the subscription button.
- *Access an existing subscription purchased from a publisher's app:* If you've downloaded a publisher's app from the App Store, and subscriptions you've bought as in-app purchases are also available in News, you're automatically granted access in News. See the Apple Support article [Buy additional app features with in-app purchases and subscriptions](#).
- *Access an existing subscription purchased from a publisher:* If you've purchased a subscription directly from a publisher's website or from the publisher's app on a non-Apple device, the publisher may allow you to sign in to your account in News to access your subscription there.

To sign in, tap a story that requires a subscription to read, then tap the "Already subscribed" link. Enter the user name and password for your existing subscription.

When you subscribe to a channel, you automatically follow it, and stories from the channel appear in the Today feed.

To cancel a subscription, tap the Following tab, swipe up, tap Subscriptions below the Manage heading, select the subscription, then tap Cancel Subscription.

Related

[Get started with News on iPhone](#)

Notes

NAV TITLE: [Get started with Notes](#)

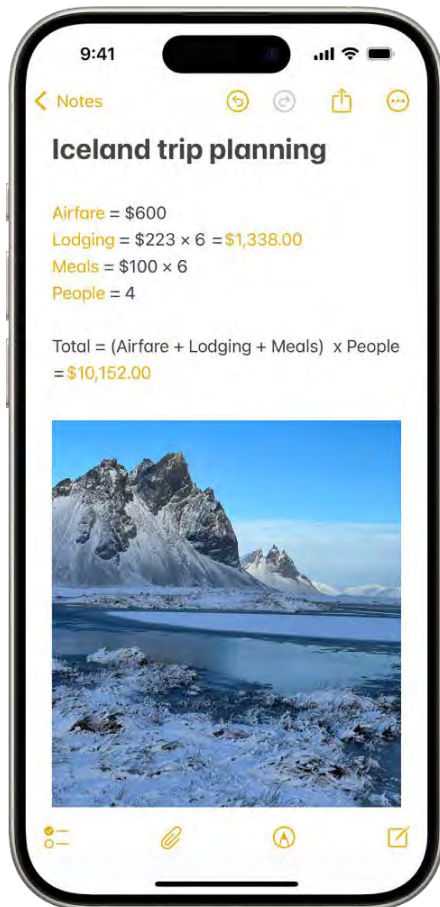
Get started with Notes on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Use the Notes app on iPhone to quickly capture your thoughts. Add images and sketches, make checklists, or scan documents.

Use the Notes app to quickly capture your thoughts. You can add images and sketches, solve equations, make checklists, or even scan documents. And with iCloud, your notes stay up to date on all your devices wherever you go.

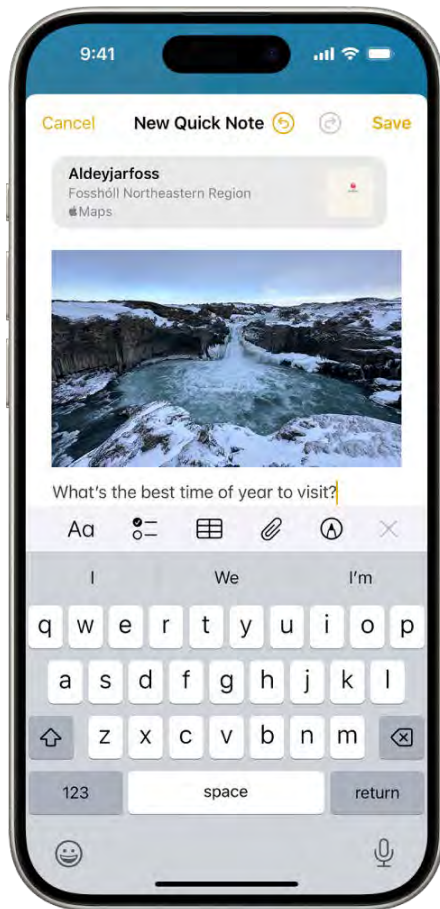
Jot it down



[Alt text: A note for planning a trip, with a calculation of the travel expenses and a photo.]

Tap  [Alt text: the New Note button] , then enter your text.

Make quick notes anywhere



[Alt text: A Quick Note in a window overlay over a map of Iceland. The note has a link to the map, a photo, and text.]

Use Quick Notes to jot down information from any app or screen. Tap  [Alt text: the Share button], then tap New Quick Note. Add images, links, and more.

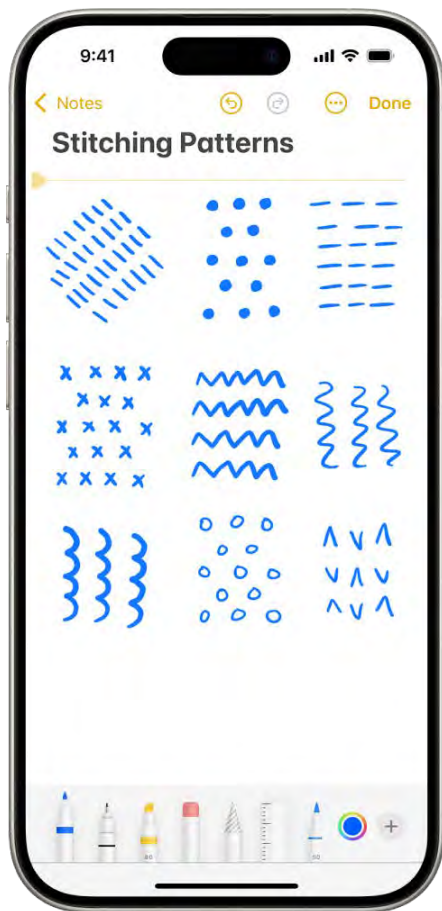
Add almost anything



[Alt text: A screen showing a document being scanned. The Take Picture button is at the bottom center.]

You can scan documents, record audio, take photos, and more. Tap  [Alt text: the Attachments button], then choose an option.

Sketch your thoughts



[Alt text: A screen showing a document being scanned. The Take Picture button is at the bottom center.]

Tap  [Alt text: the Handwriting Tools button] , then draw or write with your finger. You can choose from a variety of Markup tools and colors and draw straight lines with the ruler.

Invite others to collaborate



[Alt text: A note with an overlay showing sharing options.]

Tap  [Alt text: the Share button], then choose a sharing option. The people you share with can view or make changes to a note.

Want to learn more?

- [Create and format notes on iPhone](#)
- [Add photos, video, and more to notes on iPhone](#)
- [Add drawings and handwriting in Notes on iPhone](#)
- [Share notes and collaborate on iPhone](#)

The availability of Notes features may vary depending on your language and country or region.

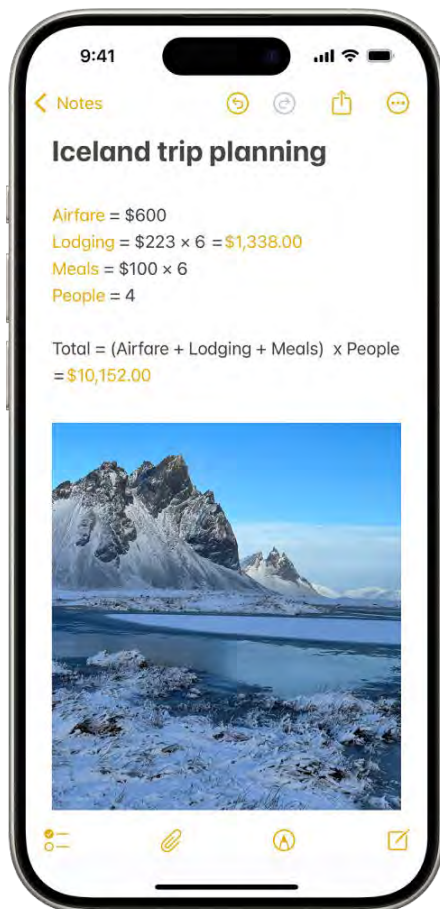
NAV TITLE: [Create and format notes](#)

Create and format notes on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Use Notes on your iPhone to jot down quick thoughts or organize detailed information in checklists, tables, and more.

Use the Notes app to jot down quick thoughts or organize detailed information with checklists, images, web links, scanned documents, handwritten notes, and sketches. You can even organize your note with sections and headings.



[Alt text: A note for planning a trip, with a calculation of the travel expenses and a photo.]

Create a new note

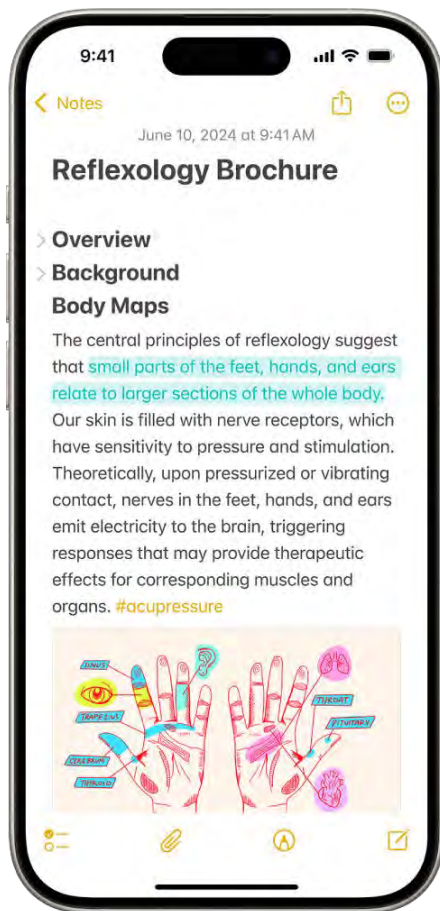
1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the New Note button] , then enter your text.
The first line of the note becomes the note's title.
3. To save the note, tap Done.

Add formatting, checklists, and tables

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. When writing a note, do any of the following:
 - *Format text:* Tap **Aa** [ALT text: the Format button], then choose a style such as Heading, bold or italic font, highlight, and more.
 - *Make a checklist:* Tap  [ALT text: the Checklist button].
 - *Add a table:* Tap  [ALT text: the Add Table button].

Organize a note with sections and headings

You can collapse and expand sections, making it easy to manage and outline long notes.



[ALT text: A note in the Notes app, with collapsible headings at the top of the screen.]

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In a note, select the text for the heading.
3. Tap **Aa** [ALT text: the Format button], then tap Heading or Subheading.

4. Add content to the section, then do any of the following:

- *Collapse a section:* Tap  [Alt text: the Collapse button] .
- *Expand a section:* Tap  [Alt text: the Expand button] .

Related

[Add photos, video, and more to notes on iPhone](#)

[Use Quick Notes on iPhone](#)

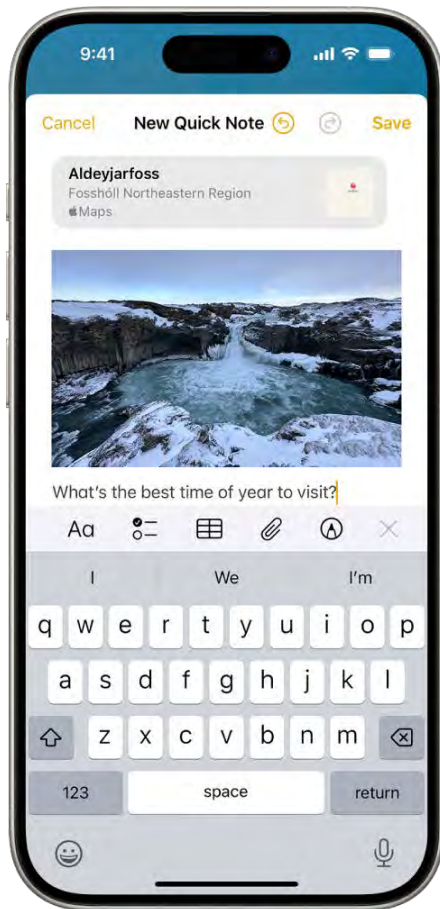
NAV TITLE: [Use Quick Notes](#)

Use Quick Notes on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, use Quick Notes to jot down information over any app or screen.

You can use Quick Notes to jot down information over any app or screen on iPhone. Add links, images, tags, and mentions to a Quick Note so you can get to important names, numbers, and ideas easily. When you highlight text in Safari or add a link from an app, you see a Quick Note thumbnail next time you visit the site, taking you right to what you were viewing before.



[Alt text: A note showing a to-do list for a family vacation. The note contains a link to a webpage, a link to another note, a list of items to buy, and a photo at the bottom.]

You can access all your Quick Notes in the Notes app. And when you make a Quick Note on your iPhone, you can see the note on your iPad and Mac, too.

Take a Quick Note

To make a Quick Note from any app, do any of the following:

- Tap  [Alt text: the Share button] , then tap Add to Quick Note.
- [Open Control Center](#), then tap  [Alt text: the Quick Note button] .

(If you don't see  [Alt text: the Quick Note button] , add it to Control Center—go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Control Center, then choose Quick Note.)

View and organize Quick Notes

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Quick Notes in the folders list.

Note: You can't lock a Quick Note unless you move it to a different folder.

If you move an individual Quick Note to a different folder, it becomes a standard note and no longer appears as a Quick Note in other apps.

Related

[Search through your notes on iPhone](#)

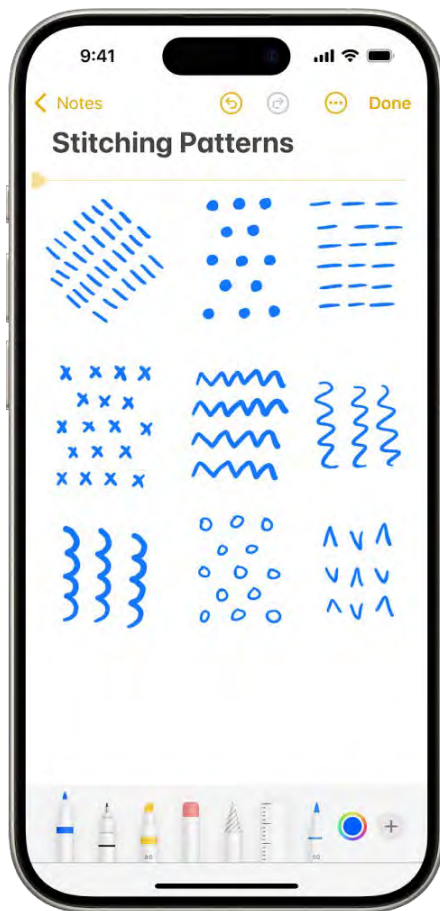
NAV TITLE: [Add drawings and handwriting](#)

Add drawings and handwriting in Notes on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Notes on your iPhone, draw a sketch or write with your finger. Choose Markup tools and colors and draw straight lines with the ruler.

Use the Notes app to draw a sketch or jot a handwritten note with your finger. Choose from a variety of Markup tools and colors, and draw straight lines with the ruler.



[Alt text: A note showing a drawing and Markup tools along the bottom of the screen.]

Use drawing and handwriting tools

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In a note, tap  [Alt text: the Handwriting Tools button], then draw or write with your finger.
3. Do any of the following:
 - *Change color or tools:* [Use the Markup tools.](#)
 - *Adjust the handwriting area:* Drag the resize handle (on the left) up or down.

Tip: You can search handwritten text (in [supported languages](#)) in Notes. If the note doesn't have a title, the first line of handwritten text becomes the suggested title. To edit the title, scroll to the top of the note, then tap Edit.

Select and edit drawings and handwriting

With Smart Selection, you can select drawings and handwriting. You can move, copy, or delete the selection within the note. You can even paste it as typed text in another note or app.

Note: Smart Selection and handwriting transcription work if the system language of your

iPhone is set to a supported language in Settings  [ALT N/A] > General > Language & Region > iPhone Language. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In a note, select drawings and handwriting with your finger using any of the following methods:
 - *With the Lasso tool:* Tap  [Alt text: the Handwriting Tools button], tap  [Alt text: the Lasso tool] (between the eraser and ruler in the tool palette), then use your finger to outline the objects you want to select.
 - *With gestures:*
 - Touch and hold, then drag to expand the selection.
 - Double-tap to select a word.
 - Triple-tap to select a sentence.(Adjust the selection by dragging the handles if necessary.)
3. Choose any of the following:
 - Cut
 - Copy
 - Delete
 - Duplicate
 - Insert Space Above

Work with handwritten text

You can edit, refine, and use your handwriting in many ways. When you edit handwritten text, the text automatically reflows to fit the space.

Note: Handwriting with Smart Script is available on certain models. Handwriting reflow is supported with select languages.

- COMMENT - Will need to point to a disclaimer somewhere. Will this be available at [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#)?

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In a note, [select the handwriting](#).
3. Choose any of the following:
 - *Refine:* Your writing becomes smoother, straighter, and more legible.
 - *Copy as Text:* You can paste the transcribed text in a note or another app.
 - *Translate:* You can copy the translated text or open the Translate app.

- *Straighten*: Your writing becomes more level.
4. You can also edit your handwriting and have the text automatically reflow with any of these methods:
- *Check spelling*: Tap an underlined word, then choose how you want to correct it. The fix will appear in your own writing style.
 - *Paste typed text in your handwriting*: Copy text from a webpage, document, or email and paste it in your own handwriting. You can even paste it in the middle of a paragraph as you would with typed text.
 - *Move handwriting*: Touch and hold, then drag to move your handwriting to a new position. You can paste your writing in the middle of a paragraph and add some space.
 - *Delete text*: Scratch out writing to remove it.

Drag images from other apps

You can drag images from other apps to a note and combine them with handwritten and drawn content. After you add an image to the drawing area, you can reposition and resize the image.

Related

[Enter formulas and equations in Notes on iPhone](#)

[Add photos, video, and more to notes on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Enter formulas and equations](#)

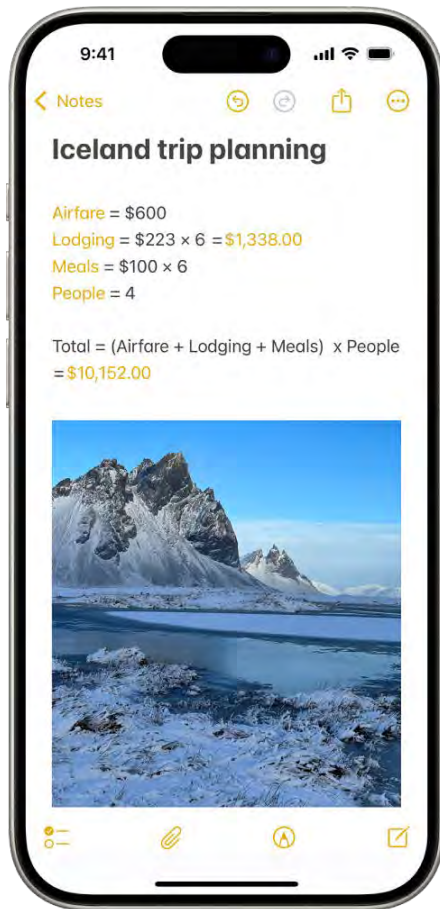
Enter formulas and equations in Notes on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In the Notes app on your iPhone, draw diagrams, solve equations, assign variables, and plot graphs. Mathematical expressions are solved inline when you write or type an equal sign.

In the Notes app, you can use math, draw diagrams, solve equations, assign variables, and plot graphs. Mathematical expressions are solved inline when you write or type an equal sign.

Note: Supported for math written using Western Arabic numerals and common mathematical symbols, or typed using Arabic (Eastern & Western) and Devanagari numerals and common mathematical symbols.



[Alt text: A note for planning a trip, with a calculation of the travel expenses and a photo.]

Add mathematical expressions to a note

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a note, or tap  [Alt text: the New Note button] to start a new note.
3. Do any of the following:
 - [Solve math with Math Notes.](#)
 - [Work with graphs in Math Notes.](#)

Access Math Notes created in the Calculator app

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In the Folders list, tap Math Notes.

Related

[Add drawings and handwriting in Notes on iPhone](#)

[Add photos, video, and more to notes on iPhone](#)

Add photos, video, and more to notes on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Notes on your iPhone, add photos, videos, and info from other apps, such as maps, links, and documents.

In the Notes app, you can add photos, videos, and information from other apps, such as maps, links, and documents.

Add a photo or video

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In a note, tap  [ALT text: the Attachments button], then choose an option.

You can choose a photo or video from your photo library, or take a new photo or video.

Tip: To [draw on a photo](#), tap the photo, then tap  [ALT text: the Handwriting Tools button].

To save photos and videos taken in Notes to the Photos app, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Notes, then turn on Save to Photos.

Add info from another app to a note

You can add information from another app as an attachment to a note—for example, a location in Maps, a webpage in Safari, a PDF in Files, or a screenshot.

1. In the app you're using, open the item you want to share (for example, a map or webpage).
2. Tap Share or  [ALT text: the Share button], then tap Notes or New Quick Note.

Change the preview size of attachments

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In a note, you can change the preview size of the following:
 - *A single attachment:* Touch and hold the attachment, tap View As, then choose Small or Large.
 - *All attachments in a note:* Tap  [ALT text: the More button], tap Attachment View, then choose Set All to Small or Set All to Large.

View all attachments in Notes

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Above the notes list, tap  [Alt text: the Folder Actions button], then tap View Attachments to see thumbnails of photos, links, documents, and other attachments. (Attachments in locked notes aren't shown.)
3. To go to a note with a specific attachment, tap the attachment thumbnail, then tap Show in Note.

Related

[Record and transcribe audio in Notes on iPhone](#)

[Scan text and documents in Notes using the iPhone camera](#)

NAV TITLE: [Record and transcribe audio](#)

Record and transcribe audio in Notes on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Notes on your iPhone, add audio recording and transcribe the spoken words to text.

In the Notes app, you can record audio and have the spoken words transcribed to text. You can search the transcript, add the text to the note, or copy the text to other documents.

Note: Audio transcription is available only in English for the variants of Australia, Canada, Ireland, New Zealand, South Africa, UK, and U.S.

Record live audio and see the transcript

You can record audio and have the spoken words transcribed in a note.

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In a note, tap  [Alt text: the Attachments button], then tap Record Audio.
3. To start the recording, tap  [Alt text: the Record button].
4. When you're done, tap  [Alt text: the Stop button].
5. To see the transcript, tap  [Alt text: the Transcription button].

Note: Spoken words in supported languages are automatically transcribed. If you don't see  [Alt text: the Transcription button], your iPhone doesn't meet the minimum requirements or detect a supported language.

Play an audio recording and review the transcript

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. View a note with an audio recording.
3. To play the audio recording, tap  [Alt text: the Play button] .
4. To review the transcript, tap the audio recording.

Note: Spoken words in supported languages are automatically transcribed. If you don't see  [Alt text: the Transcription button] , your iPhone doesn't meet the minimum requirements or detect a supported language.

5. While viewing the transcript, you can do any of the following:
 - *Play the audio at a specific point:* Tap the text you want to hear.
 - *Search the transcript:* Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Find in Transcript.
 - *Copy the transcript:* Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then choose Add Transcript to Note or Copy Transcript.
 - *Save or delete the audio recording:* Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then choose an option.

Note: Deleting the audio recording also deletes the transcript.

Related

[Add photos, video, and more to notes on iPhone](#)
[Use Quick Notes on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Scan text and documents](#)

Scan text and documents in Notes using the iPhone camera

Metadata

Summary: Use the iPhone camera to scan text and documents in a note.

In the Notes app, you can use the camera to scan text and documents.

Scan text into a note

You can insert scanned text using the camera (on [supported models](#); in [supported languages](#)).

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In a note, tap  [Alt text: the Attachments button] , then tap Scan Text.
3. Position iPhone so that the text appears within the camera frame.
4. Drag or use grab points to select text, then tap Insert.

Scan a document into a note

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In a note, tap  [ALT text: the Attachments button], then tap Scan Documents.
3. Position iPhone so that the document page appears on the screen; iPhone automatically captures the page.



[ALT text: A screen showing a document being scanned. The Take Picture button is at the bottom center.]

To manually capture the page, tap  [ALT text: the Take Picture button] or press a volume button.

To turn the flash on or off, tap  [ALT text: the Show Flash Settings button].

4. Scan additional pages, then tap Save when you're done.

The document is saved as a PDF in the note.

Related

[Work with PDFs in Notes on iPhone](#)

[Add photos, video, and more to notes on iPhone](#)

Work with PDFs in Notes on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Notes on your iPhone, attach, view, edit, and collaborate on PDFs. Annotate or sketch directly on PDFs and scanned documents in your note.

In the Notes app, you can attach, view, edit, and collaborate on PDFs, including documents you [scanned into a note](#). You can also annotate or sketch directly on PDFs and scanned documents in your note. You can even preview multiple PDFs in the same note.

Attach a PDF to a note

To attach a PDF from an app such as Files or Mail, do any of the following:

- Drag the file into a note.
- Touch and hold the file, tap Share, tap Notes, then choose a note.

View and edit a PDF in a note

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In the note with the PDF, tap  [Alt text: the Menu button], then do any of the following:
 - *Change the preview size:* Tap View As, then choose Small, Medium, or Large.
 - *View in full screen:* Tap Quick Look.
 - *Copy, share, rename, or delete the PDF:* Choose an action.
3. When using the Medium or Large preview size, you can also do any of the following:
 - *Show or hide thumbnails:* Tap  [Alt text: the Thumbnails button].
 - *Zoom in and see more:* Pinch the screen or swipe right to see more pages.
 - *Edit a page:* Tap the thumbnail for the page, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then choose an action such as Rotate Left, Rotate Right, Filters, Crop Page, or Insert Blank Page. (Filters and Crop Page are supported only in scanned documents.)

Search in PDFs

See [Search through your notes](#).

Annotate a PDF in a note

- *Small preview size:* Tap the PDF to open it, then tap  [Alt text: the Handwriting Tools button].
- *Medium and large preview sizes:* Tap  [Alt text: the Handwriting Tools button].

See [Write and draw in documents with Markup](#).

Collaborate with others

Get real-time updates when you [collaborate on a note](#) with other people. As you mark up a document, draw a diagram, or add a sticker, the people you share with can see the changes on their devices.

Related

[Scan text and documents in Notes using the iPhone camera](#)

[Add drawings and handwriting in Notes on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Add links](#)

Add links in Notes on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Notes on iPhone, add links to webpages and related notes. Street and email addresses, phone numbers, and dates automatically become underlined text that you can tap to take action on.

In the Notes app, you can add links to webpages. You can also link to related notes, like a trip itinerary and a list of recommended restaurants. When you add street and email addresses, phone numbers, and dates, they automatically become underlined text that you can tap to take action on.

Link to a webpage

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In the note where you want to insert a link, do either of the following:
 - Select the text, then tap Add Link. The selected text becomes the text link. Enter the URL to specify the link destination.
 - Tap to place the insertion point, tap Add Link, then enter the URL and the name (optional).

Link to another note using the title

You can create a link to another note using the title of the target note. If the title of the target note changes, the link text updates to the new title.

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In the note where you want to add a link, tap the insertion point, then tap Add Link. Or simply type ">>".

3. Enter the title of the target note, then choose a note or create a new note.

To edit or remove the link, touch and hold the link, then choose an action.

Link to another note using custom link text

Instead of using the title of the target note, you can use custom link text. If the title of the target note changes, the link text doesn't change.

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In the note where you want to add a link, select the link text, then tap Add Link.
3. Enter the title of the target note, then choose a note.

Take action on addresses, phone numbers, dates, and more

In your notes, an underline appears below text that's recognized as a street or email address, phone number, date, or other data. Tap the underlined text to take action on it. For example, you can see a street address in Maps, compose an email, call a phone number, add a calendar event, or convert units and currency.

Note: Data detection is available when the system language of your iPhone is set to a supported language in Settings  [ALT N/A] > General > Language & Region > iPhone Language. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Related

[Use Quick Notes on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Search notes](#)

Search through your notes on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, search through your notes for typed and handwritten text, objects in images, and text in scanned documents.

In the Notes app, you can search through all your notes for typed and handwritten text, objects in images, and text in scanned documents. You can also search for text within a note.

Search for text, objects, and more in all your notes

You can search for tags, typed and handwritten text (in [supported languages](#)), objects that appear in images, and text in scanned documents.

Note: If a note is locked, only its title appears in the search results.

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Swipe down on the notes list to reveal the search field.
3. Tap the search field, then enter what you're looking for. You can also choose a suggested search, such as "Notes with Drawings," then enter additional text to refine your search.

If a note is locked, only its title appears in the search results. The search includes handwritten text (in supported languages), photos, and scanned documents.

Search within a note or attachment for typed and handwritten text

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open the note you want to search.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Note Actions button], then tap Find in Note.
4. Tap  [Alt text: the Search button], then select any of the options. To search PDFs and other attachments, select Include Attachments.
5. Enter the text you're looking for in the search field.

Related

[Organize your notes with Smart Folders on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Organize in folders](#)

Organize your notes in folders on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, organize your notes into folders and pin the important notes to the top of the notes list.

In the Notes app, you can organize your notes into folders and pin the important notes to the top of the notes list.

Create, rename, move, or delete folders

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In the folders list, do any of the following:
 - *Create a folder:* Tap  [Alt text: the New Folder button], choose an account (if you have more than one), tap New Folder, then enter a name.
 - *Create a subfolder:* Touch and hold a folder, then drag it onto another folder.

- *Rename a folder:* Touch and hold a folder, tap Rename, then enter a new name.
- *Move a folder:* Touch and hold the folder, then drag it to a new location. The folder becomes a subfolder if you drag it onto another folder.
- *Delete a folder:* Swipe left on the folder, then tap  [Alt text: the Delete Folder button] . Or touch and hold the folder, then tap Delete.

If you change your mind, open the Recently Deleted folder to recover the notes.

Pin notes

To pin an important note to the top of the notes list, do the following:

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In the notes list, touch and hold the note, then tap Pin Note. Or swipe right on the note, then tap the pin.

Sort and change the folder view

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In the notes list, tap  [Alt text: the Folder Actions button] , then do any of the following:

- *Change the folder view:* Choose View as Gallery or View as List.
- *Sort the notes by title:* Tap Sort By, then choose Title.
- *Sort the notes by date:* Tap Sort By, then choose Date Edited or Date Created.

By default, the notes are grouped by date. To turn this off, tap  [Alt text: the Folder Actions button] , then tap Group By Date.

- *Reverse the sort order:* Tap Sort By, then choose Oldest First (when sorting by date) or Descending (when sorting by title).

To choose a default sorting method for all your folders, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Notes, then tap Sort Notes By.

Move a note to another folder

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In the notes list, swipe left on the note, then tap  [Alt text: the Move Folder button] . Or touch and hold the note, tap Move, then choose a folder.

Delete a note

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In the notes list, swipe left on the note, then tap  [Alt text: the Delete Folder button] . Or touch and hold the note, then tap Delete.

If you change your mind, open the Recently Deleted folder to recover the note.

Related

[Organize your notes with tags on iPhone](#)

[Organize your notes with Smart Folders on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Organize with tags](#)

Organize your notes with tags on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, use tags to categorize and organize notes; automatically filter notes across folders.

In the Notes app, you can use tags as a fast and flexible way to categorize and organize your notes. You can add one or more tags to a note, such as #shopping and #work, and easily search and filter your notes across folders using the Tag Browser or Smart Folders.

Add tags to notes

When you create or edit a note, type # followed by the tag name or choose a tag from the menu above the keyboard. A tag can only be one word, but you can use dashes and underscores to combine words. You can add multiple tags to a note.

Tip: You can use your finger to write a tag in a note. Tap the underlined tag, then tap “Convert to tag.”

Rename or delete a tag

Do any of the following:

- Below Tags at the bottom of the screen, touch and hold a tag, then tap Rename Tag or Delete Tag.
- Tap Edit (at the top of the folders list), scroll down to the tags, then tap a tag to rename it or tap  [Alt text: the Delete button] .

When you delete a tag, it's also removed from all Smart Folders that use it.

View notes with tags

Below Tags at the bottom of the screen, do any of the following:

- *View all notes with tags:* Tap All Tags.

- *View notes with specific tags:* Tap one or more tags; to exclude a tag, tap the tag until the name has a line through it. Then choose to view notes matching any or all of the selected tags.

Related

[Organize your notes with Smart Folders on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use Smart Folders](#)

Organize your notes with Smart Folders on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, create Smart Folders to automatically search and filter your notes across folders.

In the Notes app, you can easily search and filter your notes across folders using Smart Folders.

Create a Smart Folder

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the New Folder button], choose an account (if you have more than one), enter a name, then tap Make Into Smart Folder.
3. Choose one or more filters, then choose to include notes matching any or all of the selected filters. You can filter by tags, dates, mentions, and more.

You can also create a Smart Folder when viewing a list of tagged notes; tap  [Alt text: the Folder Actions button], then tap Create Smart Folder.

Convert a folder to a Smart Folder

When viewing the folder you want to convert, tap  [Alt text: the Folder Actions button], scroll to the bottom, then tap Convert to Smart Folder.

When you convert a folder, its notes are moved to the Notes folder and tagged with the name of the Smart Folder.

Note: You can't convert a shared folder, a folder with a subfolder, or a folder that contains locked notes.

Edit a Smart Folder

Do either of the following:

- In the folders list, tap Edit, then tap  [Alt text: the Folder Actions button] to add, move, and rename folders.
- Touch and hold a Smart Folder, then tap Edit Smart Folder. You can change the name or filters.

Related

[Organize your notes with tags on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Share and collaborate](#)

Share notes and collaborate on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: From your iPhone, send a copy of a note to a friend. Or invite people to collaborate in real time on a note or folder in iCloud, and everyone will see the latest changes.

In the Notes app, you can send a copy of a note to a friend. You can also invite people to collaborate in real time on a note or on a folder of notes in iCloud, and everyone will see the latest changes.

Share a copy of a note

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open the note you want to share.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Share button] , choose Send Copy, then choose how to send your note.

Collaborate on a note or folder of notes using iCloud

To collaborate with others, you can share a note or a folder of notes in iCloud. You can set permissions for the participants (such as allowing them to edit notes, add attachments, and create subfolders), and all the participants can see everyone's changes in real time. The participants must be [signed in to their Apple Account](#) and [have Notes turned on in iCloud settings](#).

Note: You can't collaborate on a locked note or on a folder with locked notes.

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
 - In the notes list, swipe left on the note you want to share, then tap  [Alt text: the Share Note button] .

- Open the note you want to share, then tap  [Alt text: the Share button] .
 - In the folder list, swipe left on the folder you want to share, then tap  [Alt text: the Share Folder button] .
 - Open the folder you want to share, tap  [Alt text: the Folder Actions button] , then tap Share Folder.
3. Choose Collaborate.
 4. To change the access and permissions, tap the share options below Collaborate. You can set any of the following:
 - Allow access only to people you invite or to anyone with the link.
 - Give participants permission to make changes or view only.
 - Allow participants to invite new people (available only when they have permission to make changes).
 5. Choose Messages or Mail to send your invitation. (AirDrop isn't supported for collaboration.)

If you send the invitation in Messages, you [get activity updates in the Messages conversation](#) when someone makes changes in the shared note. Tap the updates to go to the shared note.

View activity in a note

In the notes list, an orange dot to the left of a note title indicates the note has changed since you last looked at it.

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open the note, then swipe right on the note or swipe up on the Activity card to see who made changes and when.
3. To adjust how the activity is shown, tap  [Alt text: the Collaborate button] , then choose any of the following:
 - *Show Updates*: Shows changes made since you last opened the note.
 - *Show All Activity*: Shows all activity in the note.
 - *Show Highlights*: Shows names, dates, and changes made by each participant.

Tip: To mention a participant and notify them of important updates, type an @ sign followed by their name.

View activity in a folder

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the folder, then tap Show Folder Activity.

Change sharing settings

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. The owner of a shared note or folder can change the sharing settings by doing one of the following:
 - *Manage a shared note:* Tap  [Alt text: the Collaborate button], then tap Manage Shared Note.
 - *Manage a shared folder:* Tap  [Alt text: the Folder Actions button], then tap Manage Shared Folder.
3. Do any of the following:
 - *Remove participants:* Tap the participant you want to remove, then tap Remove Access.
 - *Change access and permission settings:* To change the settings for all participants, tap Share Options. To change the settings for one person, tap their name.
 - *Stop sharing:* When you choose this option, the shared note or folder is deleted from the devices of the other participants.

Related

[Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone](#)

[Collaborate on a document in FaceTime on iPhone](#)

[Apple Support article: If you can't share or collaborate in the Notes app on your iPhone or iPad](#)

NAV TITLE: [Export or print notes](#)

Export or print notes on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, open a note in the Pages app, export a note as a PDF, or send a note to a printer.

In the Notes app, you can open a note in the Pages app and continue working. You can also export the note as a PDF or print the note.

Open a note in Pages

1. Make sure your iPhone has the latest version of [Pages](#).
2. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
3. Open the note you want to export.

4. Tap  [Alt text: the Share button] , then tap Open in Pages.

Note: If the note is locked, you must unlock it before exporting the contents of the note to Pages. You can't edit drawings in Pages. Content such as scanned documents and PDFs appear as thumbnail images in Pages. Tags, mentions, checklists, and links to notes aren't active items in Pages. If a note is shared, the resulting Pages document isn't shared.

Export a note as a PDF

You can create a PDF of a note, using the note's current view settings for its attachments. In a note with a multipage PDF or scanned document, the exported PDF contains only the first page of the original PDF or scanned document.

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open the note you want to export.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Share button] , then tap Markup.
4. Mark up the pages in the exported PDF as needed, then tap Done to save the PDF.

Print a note

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open the note you want to print.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Share button] , then tap Print.
4. Choose the printer and other options, then tap Print.

Related

[Print from iPhone](#)

[Share notes and collaborate on iPhone](#)

[Pages User Guide for iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Lock notes](#)

Lock your notes on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, lock notes with a password or your device passcode to protect sensitive information.

In the Notes app  [ALT N/A] , you can lock notes to protect your sensitive information. You can access your locked notes using your device passcode or a custom password. If you have multiple Notes accounts, you choose the locking method for each account (for example, for your iCloud account).

Lock notes with your device passcode

If you use your device passcode to access locked notes, you don't have to create and remember a separate password, which reduces the chance of losing access to your locked notes. If you use your device passcode, you can also use Face ID or Touch ID to access your locked notes.

If you have multiple devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account, you use each device's passcode (or login password for a Mac) to access your locked notes on that device.

To access notes locked with a device passcode, you must be using iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, or later. On devices with an earlier version of the OS, you won't be able to access the locked notes.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Notes.
2. Tap Password.
3. If you have multiple accounts, choose the account you want to set a password for.
4. Tap Use Device Passcode.
5. For added convenience, you can also turn on Face ID or Touch ID.

Lock notes with a custom password

Creating a custom password for locked notes can provide additional security, but if you forget the password, you may lose access to your locked notes.

You use your custom password to access your locked notes on all devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account. If you have more than one iCloud account or an "On My iPhone" account, you can set a different custom password for each account.

To access notes locked with a custom password, you must be using iOS 9.3, iPadOS 13, OS X 10.11.4, or later. On devices with an earlier version of the OS, you won't see the notes.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Notes.
2. Tap Password.
3. If you have multiple accounts, choose the account you want to set a password for.
4. Tap Use Custom Password.
5. For added convenience, you can also turn on Face ID or Touch ID.

Don't rely on Face ID or Touch ID as the only means of unlocking your notes. If you update your Face ID or Touch ID settings, or want to change your Notes password, you have to reenter your Notes password.

Important: If you forget your custom password, and you can't use Face ID or Touch ID to access your locked notes, Apple can't help you regain access to those notes.

You can reset your custom password, but this doesn't give you access to previously locked notes. The new custom password applies to all notes you lock from now on. Go to Settings > Apps > Notes, then tap Password > Reset Password.

See the Apple Support article [How to lock or unlock notes on your iPhone or iPad](#).

Change the locking method

If you're using a custom password, you can switch to using your device passcode. When you change your locking method, notes that you accessed with the previous method begin using the new method.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Notes.
2. Tap Password, choose an account (if you have more than one), then tap Use Device Passcode.

Lock a note

You can only lock notes on your device and notes in iCloud. You can't lock notes that have PDFs, audio, video, Keynote, Pages, or Numbers documents attached; notes that sync with other accounts; or Quick Notes. You can't lock a note that is being shared in iCloud.

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open the note, then tap  [Alt text: the Note Actions button] .
3. Tap Lock.

When a note is locked, the title remains visible in the notes list.

To remove a lock from a note, tap  [Alt text: the Note Actions button] , then tap Remove.

Open your locked notes

Opening one locked note opens all your locked notes in the same account for several minutes so you can easily jump into another note or copy and paste information from other apps.

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the locked note, then tap View Note.
3. To open the note, use Face ID, Touch ID, your device passcode, or your Notes password.

To lock your notes again, do any of the following:

- Tap the lock icon at the top of the screen.

- Tap Lock Now at the bottom of the notes list.
- Close the Notes app.
- Lock your iPhone.

Related

[Change your Notes settings on iPhone](#)

[Set a passcode on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Add or remove accounts](#)

Add or remove accounts in Notes on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In the Notes app on iPhone, use multiple accounts—such as iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, Google, and Yahoo—and keep all your notes in one place. Your notes stay up to date on all your devices that use the same accounts.

In the Notes app  [ALT N/A], you can use multiple accounts—such as iCloud, enterprise-managed iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, Google, and Yahoo—and keep all your notes in one place. Your notes stay up to date on all your devices that use the same accounts. You can also have an On My iPhone account for notes you keep only on this device.

Note: All Notes features described in this guide are available when you use iCloud and the On My iPhone account. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Keep your notes up to date on all your devices with iCloud

Your iCloud notes—and any changes you make to them—appear on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#).

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > iCloud.
2. Turn on Notes.

Add other accounts

You can use the Notes app to manage your notes in other accounts, such as Microsoft Exchange, Google, and Yahoo.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Notes.
2. Tap Notes Accounts, then tap Add Account.
3. Do one of the following:

- Choose an account provider, then enter your account information.
- If your account provider isn't listed, tap Other, tap Add Mail Account, enter your email account information, then turn on Notes for that account.

Set up an On My iPhone account

Notes in this account appear only on your iPhone, and they're included in your iPhone backups to iCloud.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Notes.
2. Turn on "On My iPhone" Account.

Remove an account

When you remove or delete an account, the notes in that account no longer appear on your iPhone. The notes remain in your internet account (for example, iCloud.com or Google) and any other devices you had already set up.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Notes.
2. Tap Notes Accounts, then tap the account you want to remove.
3. Do one of the following:

- *Stop using Notes on the account:* Turn off Notes.

You can continue to use the account for other services, such as Mail.

- *Stop using all services on the account:* Tap Sign Out (for an iCloud account) or Delete Account (for other accounts).

If you don't see Sign Out or Delete Account, your account may be managed by your organization. See an administrator for removal instructions.

Related

[Change your Notes settings on iPhone](#)

[Create and format notes on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Change the Notes view](#)

Change the Notes view on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, add lines or grids to your notes, view notes as a list or gallery, and see all the attachments in one place.

You can change how your notes appear in the Notes app  [ALT N/A] . Add lines or grids to your notes, view your notes as a list or a gallery, and see all the attachments in one place.

Show lines or grids in notes

- *In an existing note:* Tap  [Alt text: the Note Actions button] , tap Lines & Grids, then choose a style.
- *In all new notes:* Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Notes, then tap Lines & Grids.

View notes as a list or gallery

When viewing a folder of notes, tap  [Alt text: the Folder Actions button] , then tap View as List or View as Gallery.

View all attachments

When viewing a folder of notes, tap  [Alt text: the Folder Actions button] , then tap View Attachments.

Related

[Add drawings and handwriting in Notes on iPhone](#)

[Change your Notes settings on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Change Notes settings](#)

Change your Notes settings on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, customize your preferences for the Notes app in Settings.

In Settings, you can customize your preferences for the Notes app  [ALT N/A] . Choose the default account for new notes, set a password, and more.

Customize your Notes settings

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Notes.
2. Adjust any of the following:
 - *Accounts:* [Add or remove accounts in Notes](#).
 - *Siri & Search:* Allow [Siri](#) to make suggestions across apps based on the way you use Notes. You can also allow suggestions and content from Notes to appear in [Search](#) and [widgets](#).

- *Notifications:* [Change notification settings](#).
- *Language:* Choose your preferred languages.
- *Default Account:* Choose the [default account](#) when creating notes using Siri and the Notes widget.
- *Password:* [Lock important notes](#).
- *“On My iPhone” Account:* Turn on the [On My iPhone account](#).
- *Mention Notifications:* Receive notifications when your name is mentioned in [shared notes](#).
- *Viewing:* Choose [viewing options](#) such as the sort order, lines and grids, and group notes by date.
- *App Links:* Get suggested app links.
- *Auto Convert to Tag:* Automatically change #text to a [tag](#) when typing a space.
- *Save to Photos:* Save [photos and videos](#) taken in Notes to the Photos app.
- *Access Notes from Lock Screen:* Choose Always Create New Note or Resume Last Note. Or turn it off to prevent access from the Lock Screen.

Related

[Find settings on iPhone](#)

Learn more in Notes

Learn more topics in the Notes app on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: The Learn more links in the UI go the following pages.

In iOS 18, the Learn more links in the Notes app go the following pages:

- [About setting the password](#)
- [Update your drawings in Notes](#)

- [Notes with some items aren't visible on earlier OS versions](#)

About setting the password

Metadata

Summary: When you lock your notes, you create a password. You can then use that password to unlock your notes on all your devices.

NoIndex

Locking your notes adds a layer of security in the Notes app on your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or Mac. You can access your locked notes using your device passcode or a custom password. If you have multiple Notes accounts, you choose the locking method for each account.

Device passcode

If you use your device passcode to access locked notes, you don't have to create and remember a separate password, which reduces the chances of losing access to your locked notes. If you use your device passcode, you can also use Face ID or Touch ID to access your locked notes.

If you have multiple devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account, you use each device's passcode (or login password for a Mac) to access your locked notes on that device.

You can access notes locked with a device passcode on devices with iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, or later. On devices with an earlier version of the OS, you won't be able to access the locked notes.

Custom password

Creating a custom password for locked notes can provide additional security, but if you forget the password, you may lose access to your locked notes.

You use your custom password to access your locked notes on all devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account. If you have more than one iCloud account or an On My iPhone account, you can set a different custom password for each account.

If you use a custom password, you can use Face ID or Touch ID to access your locked notes, but don't rely on Face ID or Touch ID as the only way to unlock your notes. If you update your Face ID or Touch ID settings, you have to enter your custom password. You may also be prompted periodically to enter your custom password. For these reasons, it is strongly recommended that you add a password hint when you create the password. The hint appears after two unsuccessful attempts to enter the password.

If you forget your custom password but can still access locked notes with Face ID or Touch ID, you can change the password. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Notes, tap Password, choose an account (if you have more than one), tap Change Password, authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID, then create a new password. The locked notes are updated to the new password.

You can view notes locked with a custom password on devices with iOS 9.3, iPadOS 13, OS X 10.11.4, or later. On devices with an earlier version of the OS, you won't see the notes.

Change the locking method

If you're using a custom password, you can switch to using your device passcode. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Notes, tap Password, then choose an account (if you have more than one), then tap Use Device Passcode.

- COMMENT -

Topic ID: apdeefb92e46

How to access:

1. Go to Settings > Apps > Notes > Password.
2. Tap Learn More (below Face ID).

Update your drawings in Notes

Metadata

Summary: With iOS 13, iPadOS 13, or later, you can view but not edit drawings made with an earlier version of the OS unless you update the drawings.

NoIndex

With iOS 13, iPadOS 13, or later, you (and your collaborators) can view drawings made with an earlier version of the OS, but you can't edit the drawings unless you update them.

1. Go to the Notes app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a note with drawings you want to update.
3. Tap a drawing, then tap Update Drawings.

After you update the drawings:

- On devices with iOS 13, iPadOS 13, or later, you (and your collaborators) can edit the drawings.

- On devices with an earlier version of the OS, you (and your collaborators) can view but not edit the drawings.

Additionally, some drawings created with iOS 15, iPadOS 15, or later can be viewed but not edited with an earlier version of the OS.

- COMMENT -

Topic ID: apd425ee0dbf

How to access:

1. Open a note with a pre-update drawing.
2. Tap the drawing, then tap Learn More.

Notes with some items aren't visible on earlier OS versions

Metadata

Summary: If you add a tag, mention, or link to another note, this note won't appear on devices with an earlier OS version.

NoIndex

You have at least one device with an OS version that doesn't support tags, mentions, and links to other notes. If you add a tag, mention, or link to another note, this note won't appear on devices with an earlier OS. If this is a shared note, it won't be visible to participants (including the owner) who are using devices with an earlier OS.

To see this note on all your devices, update all your devices to the current version of the OS, or remove the tag, mention, or link from this note.

- COMMENT -

Topic ID: apd5505d1ff1

How to access:

1. Have at least one device on your account with iOS 14.5, iPadOS 14.5, macOS 11.3, or earlier.
2. On a device with iOS 17 or later, create a note with a tag, mention, or link to another note.
3. Tap the Learn More link (below "This note is not supported on some of your devices").

Passwords

NAV TITLE: [Use passwords](#)

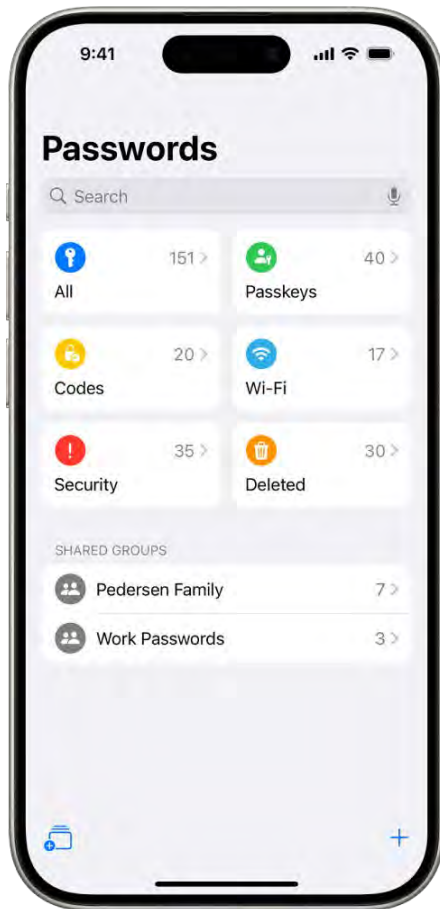
Use passwords on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In the Passwords app on iPhone, find all your passwords, passkeys, and verification codes in one place, and use them on all your devices.

In the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] , you can find all your passwords, passkeys, and verification codes in one place. You can use them on all your devices when you sign in to iCloud with the same [Apple Account](#) and turn on Passwords & Keychain in iCloud settings. And if you use AutoFill to sign in to apps and websites, your passwords automatically appear in Passwords.

- COMMENT - #ba



[Alt text: The Home Screen for the Passwords app, with buttons for All, Passkeys, Verification Codes, W-Fi, Security, and Deleted, along with a list of Shared Groups.]

See all your types of password credentials:

- App passwords
- Website passwords
- Sign in with Apple
- Passkeys
- Verification codes
- Wi-Fi passwords
- Passwords shared with groups

Find a password by sorting or searching. Then tap Edit to reveal the password, or to change or delete the password.

Tip: In Passwords, tap Security for recommendations to [change weak passwords](#).

Related

[Make your passkeys and passwords available on all your devices with iPhone and iCloud Keychain](#)

[Fill in your passwords automatically](#)

[Find your password for a website or app on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Find your password for a website or app](#)

Find your password for a website or app on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, find your password for a website or app by searching or sorting your accounts.

You can find your password for a website or app by searching or sorting your accounts on iPhone.

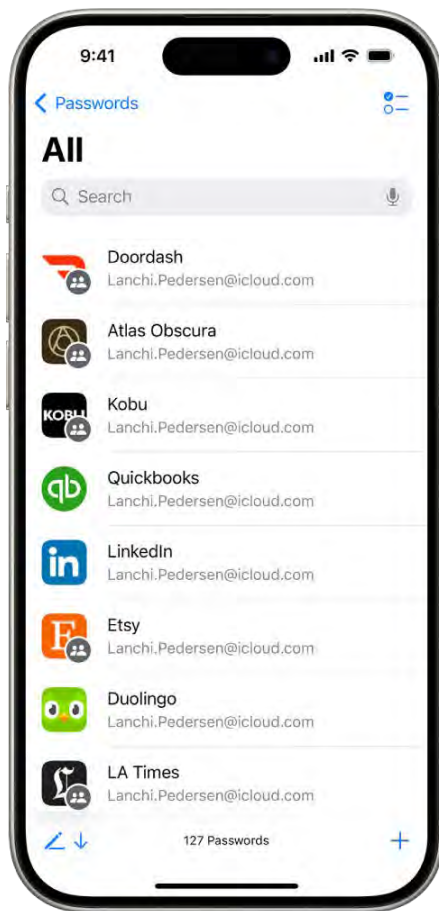
Find your password for a website or app by searching for the account

1. Go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Enter the name of the account in the Search field at the top of the screen.
3. Tap the account, then tap the Password field.

Find your password for a website or app by sorting your accounts

1. Go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap All.

- COMMENT - #ba



[Alt text: A list of all accounts with passwords that are stored in the Passwords app.]

3. Tap  [Alt text: A pair of blue up and down arrows] in the lower-left corner, then tap how you want to sort your accounts.
4. Locate and tap the account, then tap the Password field.

Related

[Use passwords on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Change the password for a website or app](#)

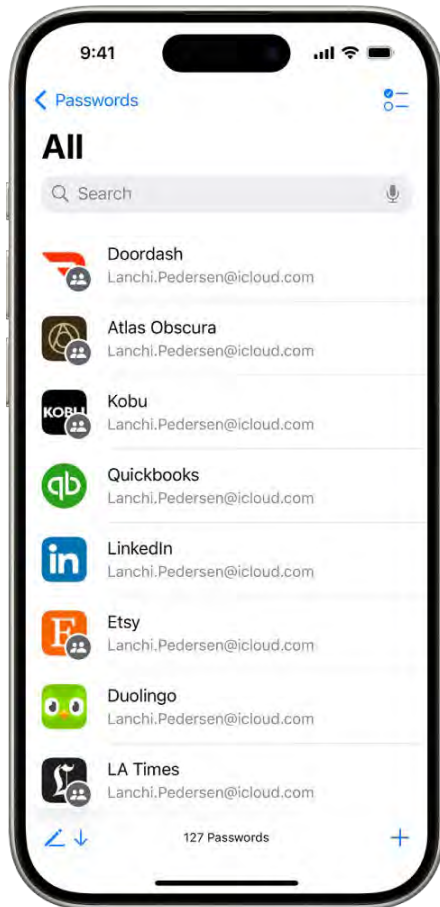
Change the password for a website or app on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, change your password for a website or app.

You can change the password you use to sign in to a website or app on your iPhone.

- COMMENT - #ba



[Alt text: A list of all accounts with passwords that are stored in the Passwords app.]

1. Go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then locate the account for the website or app.
3. Tap the account.
4. Tap Change Password, then change your password on the website or in the app.

If the website or app allows you to [upgrade to sign in with Apple](#), you can take advantage of the security and convenience of that feature. If you aren't given the upgrade option when you change your password, many accounts allow iPhone to [automatically create a strong password](#) that you don't have to remember.

Note: If iPhone warns you about a password for a website or app that's no longer available, you can remove its account from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain. Go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone, tap All, then swipe left on the account.

Related

[Find your password for a website or app on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Remove a password](#)

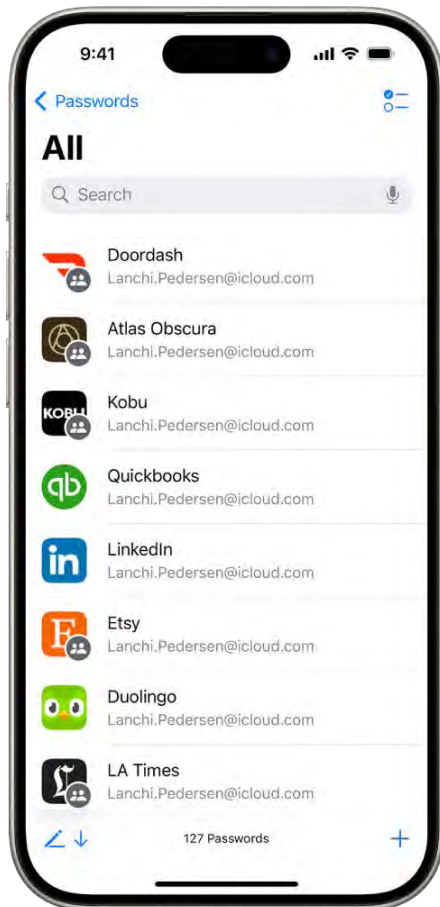
Remove a password from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, delete a password for a website or an app.

You can delete the password you use to sign in to a website or app on your iPhone.

- COMMENT - #ba



[Alt text: A list of all accounts with passwords that are stored in the Passwords app.]

1. Go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then tap the account for the password you want to delete.
3. Tap Edit.
4. Tap Delete Password, then tap Delete Password again to confirm.

Note: This action doesn't remove the password from the website or app where you created it.

Related

[Recover a password you deleted from your iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Recover a deleted password](#)

Recover a password you deleted from your iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, recover a website or app password that you deleted.

If you delete a password from your iPhone, you have 30 days to recover the password before it's permanently deleted.

1. Go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Deleted.
3. Locate the account for the deleted password, then tap the account.
4. Tap Recover.

The password is returned to your iPhone and iCloud Keychain.

Related

[Remove a password from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain](#)

NAV TITLE: [Create a password for a website or app](#)

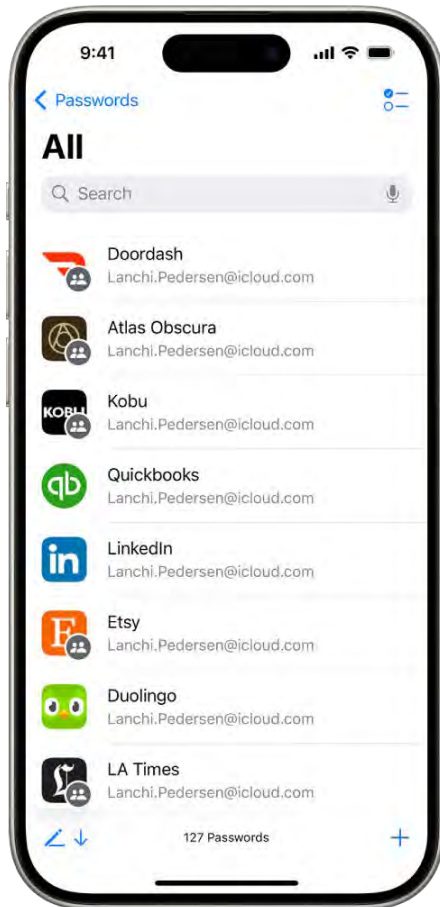
Create a password for a website or app on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, automatically create a password to use on a website or app.

Your iPhone can generate a password to use on a website or app.

- COMMENT - #ba



[Alt text: A list of all accounts with passwords that are stored in the Passwords app.]

1. Go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap All.
3. Tap  [Alt text: A blue plus sign in the lower-right corner.]

A secure password is created for you.

4. Enter details about the website or app, and a user name for your account.
5. Tap Save.

You can also create a password when you sign up for services on websites and in apps. See [Create a strong password for a new account](#).

Related

[Change the password for a website or app on iPhone](#)

Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, use passkeys to securely and easily sign in without passwords to websites and apps.

You can create and save passkeys to replace the passwords you use to sign in to supported apps and websites on your iPhone.

Passkeys are more secure than passwords, because they're uniquely generated for every account by your own device and are less vulnerable to phishing. And they work on all your devices that are signed in to the same Apple Account.

Also, websites and apps can automatically create passkeys for your account, so you can use the passkeys the next time you sign in.

Like passwords, passkeys are encrypted and stored in your iCloud Keychain, where they aren't visible to anyone (including Apple).

Note: To use passkeys, [iCloud Keychain](#) and [two-factor authentication](#) must be turned on.

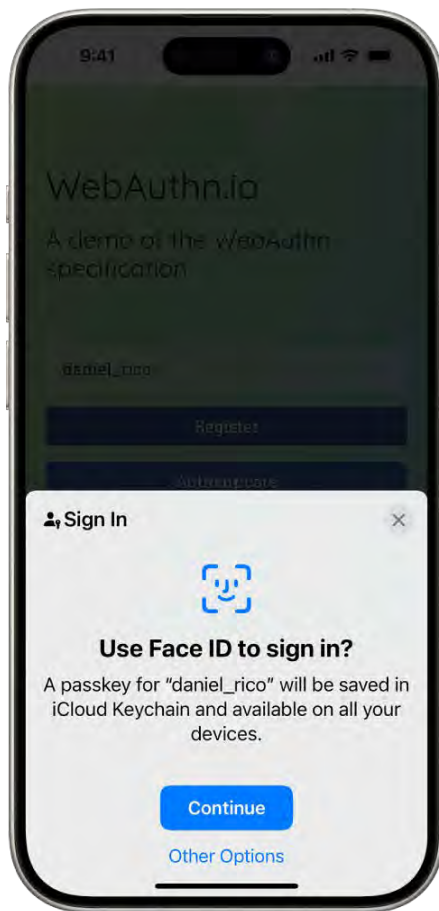
Create and save a passkey using your iPhone

You can create and save passkeys for apps and websites that support them.

Note: The instructions for creating and saving a passkey can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. Go to the sign-in screen for a supported website or app on your iPhone, and do one of the following:
 - *If you're setting up a new account:* Tap the button or link for setting up new accounts, then follow the onscreen instructions.
 - *If you already have an existing account:* Sign in with your account name and password, then go to the account settings or management screen.
2. When you see the option to save a passkey for the account, tap Continue.

Your passkey is saved.



[Alt text: A sign-in screen that appears when a passkey is saved for the account. The Continue and Other Options buttons are at the bottom of the screen.]

Note: If you don't see a passkey option, it means the website or app doesn't currently support passkeys.

The passkeys you create are stored on your iPhone in the Passwords app.

You can have a passkey and password for the same website or app, and find them both under the same account in the Passwords app.

You can also save a passkey to a hardware security key. Tap "Other options," "Save on another device," or similar (if available), then follow the onscreen instructions for saving a passkey. See [Use security keys to sign in to your Apple Account](#).

Use a passkey to sign in to a website or app on your iPhone

After you create and save a passkey for a website or app, you can use the passkey whenever you sign in.

Note: The instructions for signing in with a passkey can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. Go to a website or app on your iPhone, and tap the account name field on the sign-in screen.
2. Tap the suggested account name that appears at the bottom of the screen or near the top of the keyboard. If the account name doesn't appear, or you want to use a different one, enter it.
3. Use Face ID or Touch ID to complete sign in. If you didn't set up Face ID or Touch ID on your iPhone, enter your device passcode (the code you use to unlock your iPhone).

The passkey you saved completes the sign-in automatically.

Use a passkey saved on your iPhone to sign in on another device

If you're using a device not associated with your Apple Account (such as a computer at a public library, an internet cafe, or a friend's house) and you have your iPhone with you, you can sign in to apps or websites on that device using the passkeys you created for them.

Note: The instructions for using a passkey on another device can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. On the other device, go to the website or app and enter your user name in the account name field on the sign-in screen.
2. Select "Other options," "Passkey from nearby device," or similar, then follow the onscreen instructions to display a QR code on the screen.
3. Use your iPhone camera to scan the QR code.

The passkey that's saved to iCloud Keychain completes the sign-in automatically.

Create a passkey on a device that's not your own

If you have your iPhone with you, you can create a passkey while using a device not associated with your Apple Account (such as a computer at a public library, an internet cafe, or a friend's house) and save it to iCloud Keychain instead of to the device you're using to create the passkey.

Note: The instructions for creating a passkey can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. On the other device, go to the sign-in page for a supported website or app, then do one of the following:
 - *If you're setting up a new account:* Tap the button or link for setting up new accounts, then enter a new username.
 - *If you already have an account:* Sign in with your account name and password, then go to the account settings or management screen.
2. When you see the option to save a passkey for the account, select "Other options," "Save on another device," or similar (instead of Continue).

Note: If you don't see a passkey option, it means the website or app doesn't currently support passkeys.

3. Select "Save a passkey on a device with a camera," or similar, then follow the onscreen instructions to display a QR code on the screen.
4. Use your iPhone camera to [scan the QR code](#).

The passkey is saved to your iPhone and iCloud Keychain.

Change a passkey

You might need to create a new passkey to replace the existing one (if, for example, you previously shared it with someone to whom you no longer want to give access).

To change a passkey, follow the steps for an existing account in [Create and save a passkey](#) or [Create a passkey on a device that's not your own](#).

Delete a passkey

1. Go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the account for the passkey you want to delete.
3. Tap Edit.
4. Tap Delete Passkey.

If you delete a passkey, you can create a new one at any time.

Related

[Apple Support article: About the security of passkeys](#)

[Add notes for an account with a passkey or password](#)

[Remove a passkey or password from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain](#)

NAV TITLE: [Sign in with Apple](#)

Sign in with Apple on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, use Sign in with Apple to sign in to participating websites and apps.

With Sign in with Apple, you can sign in to participating websites and apps with your [Apple Account](#). You don't need to create and remember new passwords, and your account is protected with two-factor authentication. You can share your Sign in with Apple access with family and trusted contacts.

Sign in with Apple is designed to respect your privacy. Websites and apps can ask only for your name and email address to set up your account, and Apple won't track you as you use them.

Sign in with Apple requires [two-factor authentication](#) for your Apple Account. This protects your Apple Account, your app accounts, and your app content.

Set up or upgrade an account to Sign in with Apple

When a participating website or app asks you to set up or upgrade an account, do the following:

1. Tap Sign in with Apple.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Some apps (and websites) don't request your name and email address. In this case, you simply authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model), then start using the app.

Others may ask for your name and email address to set up a personalized account. When an app asks for this information, Sign in with Apple displays your name and the personal email address from your Apple Account for you to review.

To edit your name, tap it, then use the keyboard to make changes.

To specify an email address, do one of the following:

- *Use your personal email address:* Tap Share My Email.

If you have multiple email addresses associated with your Apple Account, choose the address you want.

- *Hide your email address:* Tap Hide My Email.

This option allows you to receive email from the app without sharing your personal email address. When you choose this option, Apple creates a unique, random email address for you, and any email sent from the app to this address is forwarded to your personal address.

After you review your information and choose an email option, tap Continue, authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model), then start using the app.

Sign in to access your account

After you set up an account with a website or app using Sign in with Apple, you typically don't need to sign in to it again on your iPhone. But if you're asked to sign in (for example, after you sign out of an account), do the following:

1. Tap Sign in with Apple.
2. Review the Apple Account that appears, then tap Continue.
3. Authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model).

Change the address used to forward email

If you chose to hide your email address when you created an account and you have more than one address associated with your Apple Account, you can change the address that receives your forwarded email.

1. Go to Settings > [your name] > Name, Phone Numbers, Email > Forward To.
2. Choose a different email address, then tap Done.

Review or change Sign in with Apple settings for apps

1. Go to Settings > [your name] > Sign in with Apple.
2. To change a setting for an app, tap it, then do any of the following:
 - *Turn off forwarding email:* Tap Manage Hide My Email, tap the app, then turn off Forward To. You won't receive any further emails from the app.
 - *Stop using Sign in with Apple:* Tap Delete, then tap Stop Using. You may be asked to create a new account the next time you try to sign in to the app.

Share your Sign in with Apple access

1. Go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then locate and tap the account where you use Sign in with Apple.
3. Tap Group, then tap New Group.
4. Enter a name for the group, then tap Add People.
5. Type the name, email address, or phone number of the person or people you want to add, then tap Add.

Note: To add someone to your group, they must be in your Contacts app and have a device using iOS 17, iPadOS 17, macOS 14, or later. If they can be added to the group, their contact information appears in blue. If it appears in gray, their iPhone, iPad, or Mac might not support shared password groups.

6. Tap Create.

Sign in with Apple also works on your other devices—iPad, Apple Watch, Mac, Apple TV, and iPod touch—where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).

To sign in from an Android app, a Windows app, or any web browser, tap Sign in with Apple, then enter your Apple Account password.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [What is Sign in with Apple?](#).

Related

[Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites on iPhone](#)

[Automatically fill in one-time verification codes on iPhone](#)

Share passwords or passkeys with people you trust on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Shared password groups are an easy and secure way to share passwords, passkeys, and Sign in with Apple credentials.

Shared password groups are an easy and secure way to share passwords, passkeys, and Sign in with Apple credentials with your family and trusted contacts.

Anyone in the group can add passwords, passkeys, and Sign in with Apple credentials. When a shared credential changes, it changes on everyone's device.

Create a group

Note: To create a shared password group, you must be signed in to your Apple Account.

1. Go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  **Alt text:** A blue plus sign in the lower-left corner.
3. Enter a name for the group, then tap Add People.
4. Type the name, email address, or phone number of the person or people you want to add, then tap Add.

Note: To add someone to your group, they must be in your Contacts app and have a device using iOS 17, iPadOS 17, macOS 14, or later. If they can be added to the group, their contact information appears in blue. If it appears in gray, their iPhone, iPad, or Mac might not support shared password groups.

5. Tap Create.
6. Select the passwords you want to share with the group, then tap Move in the top-right corner.

If you don't want to share any passwords yet, tap Not Now in the top-left corner.

7. You are given the choice to notify the people you've added to the group that they've been invited. In any case, they can also access the invitation by going to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on their iPhone.

Your shared passwords are saved in iCloud Keychain, and you can use them like any other saved password.

You'll receive a notification whenever anyone else is invited to the group.

Manage a group

If you create a group, you can add or remove other members, or delete the group. Other members of the group don't have these options, but they can choose to leave at any time.

1. Go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the name of your group.

You can add or remove other members, or delete the group.

3. When you're finished making changes, tap Done.

Respond to an invitation to a group

1. Go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the invitation, then tap Accept to join the group. You can also decline the invitation.

Important: Don't accept an invitation if you don't recognize the sender.

Related

[Share passkeys and passwords securely with AirDrop on iPhone](#)

[Automatically fill in strong passwords on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Automatically fill in strong passwords](#)

Automatically fill in strong passwords on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Let iPhone create strong passwords and automatically fill them in for many websites and apps.

When you sign up for services on websites and in apps, you can let iPhone create strong passwords for many of your accounts.

iPhone [stores the passwords in the Passwords app](#) and fills them in for you automatically, so you don't have to memorize them.

Note: Instead of requiring you to sign in with passwords, participating websites and apps support these alternatives:

- *Sign in with Apple:* Lets you use your Apple Account to sign in, and limits the information shared about you. See [Sign in with Apple](#).
- *A passkey:* Lets you use Face ID or Touch ID to securely sign in without using a password. See [Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites](#).

Create a strong password for a new account

Depending on the website or app, creating a strong password and saving it to the Passwords app usually consists of steps similar to these.

1. On the new account screen for the website or app, enter a new account name.

For supported websites and apps, iPhone suggests a unique, complex password.
2. Do one of the following:
 - *Choose the suggested password:* Tap Use Strong Password.
 - *Edit the suggested password:* Tap Other Options, tap Edit Strong Password, tap the password text field, then make your changes.
 - *Get a different strong password:* Tap Other Options, tap Edit Strong Password, then tap the suggested password.
 - *Get a strong password consisting of only numbers and letters:* Tap Other Options, then tap No Special Characters.
 - *Get a strong password that's easy to type:* Tap Other Options, then tap Easy to Type.
 - *Make up your own password:* Tap Other Options, then tap Choose My Own Password.
3. To copy the password so you can paste it into a Confirm Password field if asked, tap Other Options, then tap Copy Strong Password.
4. To [securely add and keep notes](#) about recovery key information, security questions, PIN numbers, and similar details, enter them in the Notes field.

To view the notes later, go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone, tap All, then tap the account.
5. To later allow iPhone to automatically fill in the password for you, tap Yes when you're asked if you want to save the password.

Automatically fill in a saved password

Depending on the website or app, signing in with your saved password usually consists of steps similar to these.

1. On the sign-in screen for the website or app, tap the account name field.
2. Do one of the following:
 - Tap the account suggested at the bottom of the screen or near the top of the keyboard.
 - Tap  [Alt text: the Password AutoFill button], tap Other Passwords, then tap an account.

The password is filled in. To see the password, tap  [Alt text: the Show Password Text button] .

To enter an account or password that isn't saved, tap  [Alt text: the Keyboard button] on the sign-in screen.

Turn Password AutoFill on or off

Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > General > AutoFill & Passwords, then turn on or off AutoFill Passwords and Passkeys.

You can automatically fill passwords from up to three passwords apps.

Related

[Automatically fill in SMS passcodes on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Change weak or compromised passwords](#)

Change weak or compromised passwords on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: iPhone identifies weak and compromised passwords for you automatically.

When you create and store your own passwords for websites and apps, iPhone automatically identifies common weaknesses (for example, if they're easily guessed or used multiple times). iPhone can also securely monitor your passwords and alert you if they appear in known data leaks.

Change a weak or compromised password

1. Go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Security.

If an account has a weak or compromised password, a message explains the problem.
3. Tap an account.
4. Tap the Password field, then tap Copy Password, so you can paste it where it's requested—for example, when you create a new password and you're asked to enter your old password.
5. Tap Change Password, then change your password on the website or in the app.

If the website or app allows you to use a passkey or to [upgrade to sign in with Apple](#), you can take advantage of the security and convenience of those features. If you aren't given the upgrade option when you change your password, many accounts allow iPhone to [automatically create a strong password](#) that you don't have to remember.

Note: If iPhone warns you about a password for a website or app that's no longer available, you can remove its account from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone, tap All, then swipe left on the account.

Hide a security recommendation

You can hide a security recommendation so that you don't have to continue reviewing it if you're unable to address it.

1. Go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Security.
3. Tap an account.
4. Tap Hide Alert.

Turn detection of compromised passwords on or off

iPhone can monitor your passwords and alert you if they appear in known data leaks.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Passwords.
2. Turn Detect Compromised Passwords on or off.

Related

[Automatically fill in strong passwords on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [View your passwords and related information](#)

View your passwords and related information on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Use the Settings app on iPhone to view and copy account passwords, securely add notes like security question reminders, and more.

You can view and copy passwords, add notes like security question reminders, and more with the encrypted account information stored on iPhone. iCloud Keychain securely [keeps this information up to date](#) across all your approved devices.

View and copy a password for a website or app account

1. For an account that uses a password, do one of the following:
 - Say something like: "Show me my passwords." [Learn how to use Siri.](#)
 - Go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
 - On a sign-in screen, tap  [Alt text: the Password AutoFill button] .
2. Tap an account, then tap the Password field.

3. To copy the password to use elsewhere, tap Copy Password.

Add notes for an account with a passkey or password

You can securely keep notes about recovery key information, security questions, PIN numbers, and similar details.

1. Go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then tap an account.
3. Tap Edit, tap Notes, enter your text, then tap Done.

To update the notes, tap Edit (at the top right), then tap the Notes field.

Go to the website for an account

1. Go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then tap an account.
3. Do one of the following:
 - Tap  [Alt text: the Safari button] .
 - Tap the website URL, tap Copy Website, then paste the URL into the address field of your browser.

Remove an account from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain

1. Go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Swipe left on the account.

For example, you might want to remove the account for a website or app that's no longer available.

Note: This action doesn't remove the account from the website or app where you created it.

Remove a passkey or password from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain

1. Go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then tap an account.
3. Tap Edit.
4. Tap Delete Password or Delete Passkey.

Note: This action doesn't remove the passkey or password from the website or app where you created it.

Related

[Find and share your Wi-Fi password on iPhone](#)

[Change weak or compromised passwords on iPhone](#)

[Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites on iPhone](#)

[Share passkeys and passwords securely with AirDrop on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Find and share your Wi-Fi password](#)

Find and share your Wi-Fi password on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Use the Passwords app on iPhone to find a Wi-Fi password and share it with someone nearby.

You can find the password of the Wi-Fi network you're currently using and see all the Wi-Fi networks and passwords you've previously saved. You can share the password of the Wi-Fi network you're currently using with a nearby friend or family member.

Find a Wi-Fi password

1. Go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Wi-Fi.

If you're connected to a Wi-Fi network, its name appears at the top of the screen. You can also see all the Wi-Fi networks you've previously saved.

If you don't see Wi-Fi, tap Passwords to go to the Passwords Home Screen.

3. Tap a Wi-Fi network.
4. Tap the Password field.

To copy the password to use elsewhere, tap Copy.

Share your Wi-Fi network password with a nearby friend or family member

1. Make sure your iPhone (the one sharing the password) is unlocked and connected to the Wi-Fi network.
2. Have your friend or family member go to Wi-Fi settings on their iPhone, iPad, or Mac, then choose the network.
3. When a message asks if you want to share your Wi-Fi password, tap Share Password.

Note: To share your Wi-Fi network password devices must be within Bluetooth and Wi-Fi range, not using Personal Hotspot, and added to each other's contacts.

You can also go to the Wi-Fi network and tap Show Network QR Code, which friends and family can scan to join the network.

Related

[View your passwords and related information on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Share passwords securely with AirDrop](#)

Share passkeys and passwords securely with AirDrop on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Use AirDrop on iPhone to securely share passkeys and passwords with someone's iPhone, iPad, or Mac.

You can use AirDrop to securely share passkeys and passwords for website and app accounts with someone using an iPhone, iPad, or Mac.

Note: To show someone the password you saved for a Wi-Fi network, see [Find a Wi-Fi password](#).

Check the AirDrop requirements

Compared to sharing other types of information, AirDrop has more stringent requirements for sharing passkeys and passwords.

- [iCloud Keychain must be set up](#) on your iPhone.
- The person you're sharing with [must be in your contacts list](#) in the Contacts app, and they must be listed with the email address they use for iCloud.
- You must be in the other person's contacts list in the Contacts app, and you must be listed with the email address you use for iCloud.

Send a passkey or password

To share with someone on iPhone or iPad, ask them to open Control Center and [allow AirDrop to receive items](#). To share with someone on a Mac, ask them to allow themselves to be discovered in AirDrop in the Finder.

1. Go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then tap the account you want to share.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Share button], then select the device or picture of the person you want to send the passkey or password to.

Receive a passkey or password

1. If you haven't already done so, [allow AirDrop to receive items](#).

2. When you receive a request to accept a passkey or password from someone else, tap Accept.

The passkey or password is saved to your iPhone, where you can [view its information](#) and let iPhone automatically fill it in on the sign-in screen for the account. The passkey or password is also saved to your iCloud Keychain, so you can use it on other devices where you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#).

Related

[Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Make your passwords available on all your devices](#)

Make your passkeys and passwords available on all your devices with iPhone and iCloud Keychain

Metadata

Summary: Use iCloud Keychain on iPhone to keep website passkeys, passwords, credit card information, and other account information up to date across your other devices.

Use iCloud Keychain to keep your website and app passkeys and passwords, credit card information, Wi-Fi network information, and other account information up to date across all your approved devices and Mac computers. iCloud Keychain is secured with 256-bit AES encryption during storage and transmission, and its data can't be read by Apple.

iCloud Keychain can also keep the accounts you use in Mail, Contacts, Calendar, and Messages up to date across all your iPhone and iPad devices and Mac computers.

Set up iCloud Keychain

If you didn't turn on iCloud Keychain when you first set up your iPhone, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > iCloud > Passwords and Keychain, turn on iCloud Keychain, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Set up iCloud Keychain on an additional device

When you turn on iCloud Keychain on an additional device, your other devices using iCloud Keychain receive a notification requesting your approval of the additional device.

On one of your other devices, approve the additional device. Your iCloud Keychain automatically begins updating on the additional device.

To approve iCloud Keychain when you don't have access to your other devices, follow the onscreen instructions to use your iCloud Security Code.

Recover your iCloud Keychain if all your devices are lost or stolen

iCloud Keychain syncs across devices to provide convenience and redundancy in case you lose a single device. If all your devices are lost and you've [added a recovery contact](#) to your Apple Account, your contact can help you recover your iCloud Keychain. To learn how, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > Sign-In & Security, then tap "Learn more" below Add Recovery Contact.

You can also recover your iCloud Keychain through iCloud Keychain escrow, which is also protected against brute-force attacks. iCloud Keychain escrows a user's keychain data with Apple without allowing Apple to read the passwords and other data it contains. Your keychain is encrypted using a strong passcode, and the escrow service provides a copy of the keychain only if a strict set of conditions is met.

To recover your keychain through iCloud Keychain escrow, authenticate with your Apple Account on a new device, then respond to an SMS [sent to a trusted phone number](#). After you authenticate and respond, you must enter the device passcode. iOS, iPadOS, and macOS allow only 10 attempts to authenticate. After several failed attempts, the record is locked and you must contact Apple Support on the [Apple Support website](#) to be granted more attempts.

Related

[Apple Support article: Set up iCloud Keychain](#)

NAV TITLE: [Automatically fill in verification codes](#)

Automatically fill in one-time verification codes on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: iPhone can automatically generate verification codes for websites and apps that use two-factor authentication.

Some websites and apps offer two-factor authentication (also known as *multifactor authentication*), which helps prevent other people from accessing your accounts even if they know your passwords. Passwords are the first authentication factor, and temporary, one-time verification codes are commonly a second factor. iPhone can automatically generate these verification codes without your reliance on SMS messages or additional apps.

Set up automatic verification codes for a website or app by scanning a QR code

If you have another device with a screen, like a computer or iPad, you can use it to display a QR code from a website or app, then use the iPhone camera to scan the code.

1. On your other device, sign in to the area of the website or app where you manage your account, then select options to enable two-factor authentication and an authenticator app.

A QR code appears to help you set up an authenticator app.

2. On iPhone, use the camera to scan the QR code.
3. On iPhone, select your account for the website or app.

A verification code appears below the User Name and Password fields.

4. On your other device, enter the verification code that appears on your iPhone.

Set up automatic verification codes for a website or app by entering a setup key

If you can't scan a QR code from another screen, you can manually enter a setup key.

1. Sign in to the area of the website or app where you manage your account, then select options to enable two-factor authentication and an authenticator app.
2. Choose the option to manually use a setup key (or setup code or similar), then [select and copy](#) the setup key.
3. Go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
4. Tap All, then tap your account for the website or app.
5. Tap Set Up Verification Code, then tap Enter Setup Key.
6. Tap the Setup Key field, tap Paste, then tap OK.
7. Tap the Verification Code field, then tap Copy Verification Code.
8. Return to the website or app, then [paste](#) the verification code where directed.

Use a verification code on a website or in an app

1. Sign in to the website or app.
2. If prompted, select the option to use an authenticator app.
3. When asked for a verification code, tap the suggestion that appears above the keyboard.

If no suggestion appears, go to the Passwords app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone, select your account for the website or app, tap the verification code, then tap Copy Verification Code. Return to the website or app, then [paste](#) the verification code into the field.

Automatically delete one-time verification codes

One-time verification codes are filled in automatically, so you don't need to leave the website or app you're signing in to. You can choose to automatically delete the verification codes after entering them with Autofill, or keep them.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > General > Autofill & Passwords.

2. Under Verification Codes, tap Delete After Use, then turn it on or off.

Related

[Use two-factor authentication for your Apple Account on iPhone](#)

[Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Automatically fill in SMS passcodes](#)

Automatically fill in SMS passcodes on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Use Messages on iPhone to automatically fill in one-time passcodes.

When you sign in to some websites and apps, a one-time SMS passcode is sent to your iPhone. As a security measure, you're required to enter the code into the website or app. iPhone can detect the passcode in Messages and display it above the keyboard.

To use the passcode, tap it.

Note: With Continuity, all the SMS and MMS messages you send and receive on iPhone can also appear on your other iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch devices and your Mac. See the Apple Support article [Use Continuity to connect your Mac, iPhone, iPad, and Apple Watch](#).

Related

[Automatically fill in strong passwords on iPhone](#)

[Use two-factor authentication for your Apple Account on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Sign in with fewer CAPTCHA challenges](#)

Sign in with fewer CAPTCHA challenges on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: With iCloud on your iPhone, bypass many sign-in challenges by automatically and privately verifying your device and account.

Some website and app sign-in screens require you to pass CAPTCHA challenges, such as recognizing letters in unusual shapes. iCloud allows you to bypass many challenges by automatically and privately verifying your iPhone and account. You can turn this bypass on or off.

Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > Sign-In & Security, then turn Automatic Verification on or off.

Related

[Use the built-in privacy and security protections of iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use two-factor authentication](#)

Use two-factor authentication for your Apple Account on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, prevent others from accessing your Apple Account by using two-factor authentication.

Using two-factor authentication helps prevent others from accessing your [Apple Account](#) account, even if they know your Apple Account password. When it's on, you need both your Apple Account password and a six-digit verification code to [sign in to your Apple Account](#). The verification code is sent to the phone number associated with your Apple Account, or displayed on your trusted devices.

Note: Certain account types might not support two-factor authentication. Two-factor authentication isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of two-factor authentication for your Apple Account](#).

Turn on two-factor authentication

1. On your iPhone go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > Sign-In & Security.
2. Tap Turn On Two-Factor Authentication, then tap Continue.
3. Enter a *trusted phone number* (the number you'll use to receive verification codes), then tap Next.

A verification code is sent to your trusted phone number.

4. Enter the verification code on your iPhone.

Two-factor authentication is turned on for your Apple Account, and your iPhone is now a trusted device.

Add another trusted device

After you turn on two-factor authentication on your iPhone, you can add other trusted devices to your Apple Account.

1. On the device you want to add, [sign in to the same Apple Account](#) you used to turn on two-factor authentication.
2. When prompted, enter the six-digit verification code that appears on your iPhone, another trusted device, a trusted phone number, or your Mac.
3. Enter the verification code on the new device.

You won't be asked for a verification code again unless you sign out completely, erase your device, sign in to your Apple Account page in a web browser, or need to change your Apple Account password for security reasons.

Add or remove a trusted phone number

Adding trusted phone numbers can be useful if you want to use two-factor authentication but don't have access to the phone number you added when you turned it on.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > Sign-In & Security.
2. Tap Two-Factor Authentication, tap Edit (above the list of trusted phone numbers), then enter your device passcode when prompted.
3. Do one of the following:
 - *Add a number:* Tap Add a Trusted Phone Number, then enter the phone number.
 - *Remove a number:* Tap  [Alt text] the Delete button next to the phone number.
4. When you're finished making changes, tap Done.

Trusted phone numbers don't automatically receive verification codes. If you can't access any trusted devices when setting up a new device for two-factor authentication, tap "Didn't get a verification code?" on the new device, then choose one of your trusted phone numbers to receive the verification code.

View or remove trusted devices

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name].

A list of the devices associated with your Apple Account appears near the bottom of the screen.

2. To remove a device, tap it, then tap Remove from Account.

If you remove a trusted device, it can no longer display verification codes and its access to iCloud (and other Apple services on the device) is blocked. To add it back, use two-factor authentication to [sign in to your Apple Account](#) again.

Generate a password for an app that signs in to your Apple Account

To sign in to your Apple Account from a third-party app or service (such as an email, contacts, or calendar app) using two-factor authentication, generate an app-specific password.

1. [Sign in to your Apple Account.](#)
2. Tap App-Specific Passwords, then tap “Generate an app-specific password.”
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

After you generate your app-specific password, enter or paste it into the password field of the app as you would normally.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [Sign in to apps with your Apple Account using app-specific passwords.](#)

Related

[Two-factor authentication for your Apple Account](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use security keys](#)

Use security keys to sign in to your Apple Account on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On your iPhone, security keys provide a stronger form of two-factor authentication to protect your Apple Account and other sign-in credentials.

Security Keys for your Apple Account is an optional security feature designed for people (such as celebrities, journalists, and members of government) who want extra protection from targeted attacks on their account, including phishing and social engineering scams.

A security key is a small third-party hardware device that you can connect to your iPhone and use to verify your identity when signing in to your Apple Account. The physical key replaces the six-digit verification codes normally used in two-factor authentication, which keeps this information from being intercepted or requested by an attacker.

For details about security key requirements, see the Apple Support article [About security keys for your Apple Account.](#)



[Alt text: The Security Keys welcome screen. Near the bottom is the Add Security Keys button and a Learn More link. Above them is explanatory text about the benefits of using security keys.]

Set up security keys

You need to set up at least two security keys so you can use one of them as a backup in case the other one is lost, damaged, or stolen. You can pair up to six keys with your account.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > Sign-In & Security.
2. Tap Two-Factor Authentication, tap Security Keys, then tap Add Security Keys and follow the onscreen instructions.

Sign in to a device, website, or app using a security key

1. When prompted, insert your security key (if it's an NFC key, hold or place it near the top of your iPhone).
2. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Use a security key to reset your Apple Account password

If you forget your Apple Account password, you can use a security key that's paired with your account to reset it.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > Sign-In & Security. (If you aren't already signed in to your Apple Account on your iPhone, first use your paired security key to sign in.)
2. Tap Change Password, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Use a security key to unlock your Apple Account

If you try unsuccessfully six times in a row to sign in to your Apple Account, or if your iPhone detects other signs of suspicious activity, you'll receive an onscreen notification that your Apple Account is locked. You can use your security key to unlock it.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > Sign-In & Security.
2. Tap Unlock Account, then follow the onscreen instructions to unlock your Apple Account.
3. If you think your account might have been locked because someone else knows your password, tap Change Password and enter a new one.
4. Tap Done.

Remove security keys

You can pair up to six security keys with your Apple Account. If you reach the limit and need to pair additional keys, you can remove one or more of your paired keys. You can replace keys you've removed at any time.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > Sign-In & Security.
2. Tap Security Keys.
3. To remove all keys, tap Remove All Keys, then tap Remove.

To remove individual keys, tap the ones you want to remove, then tap Remove Key.

Note: If you remove all security keys from a device, the device reverts to using six-digit verification codes for two-factor authentication.

Related

[Use two-factor authentication for your Apple Account on iPhone](#)

[Keep your Apple Account secure on iPhone](#)

Phone

NAV TITLE: [Make a call](#)

Make a call on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: To start a call on iPhone, dial the number on the keypad, tap a favorite or recent call, or choose a number in your contacts list.

There are a number of ways you can make a phone call on your iPhone: dial the number on the keypad, tap a favorite or recent call, or choose a number in your contacts list.



[Alt text: The keypad in the Phone app, displaying numbers 1 through 9. Below the keypad is a green Dial button. At the bottom are buttons for Favorites, Recents, Contacts, Keypad (selected), and Voicemail.]

Dial a number

Siri: Say “call” or “dial” followed by a number. Speak each digit separately—for example, “four one five, five five five....” For the 800 area code in the U.S., you can say “eight hundred.” [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Or do the following:

1. Go to the Phone app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Keypad at the bottom of the screen, then do any of the following:
 - *Use a different line:* On [models with Dual SIM](#), tap the line at the top, then choose a line.
 - *Enter the number using the keypad:* If you make a mistake, tap  [ALT text: the Delete button] .
 - *Redial the last number:* Tap  [ALT text: the Call button] to see the last number you dialed, then tap  [ALT text: the Call button] to call that number.
 - *Paste a number you've copied:* Tap the phone number field above the keypad, then tap Paste.
 - *Enter a soft (2-second) pause:* Touch and hold the star (*) key until a comma appears.
 - *Enter a hard pause (to pause dialing until you tap the Dial button):* Touch and hold the pound (#) key until a semicolon appears.
 - *Enter a "+" for international calls:* Touch and hold the "0" key until "+" appears.
3. Tap  [ALT text: the Call button] to start the call.

To end the call, tap  [ALT text: the End Call button] .

Add a contact to your favorites

1. Go to the Phone app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Favorites at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap  [ALT text: the Add button] , choose a contact, then choose the default method of communication (for example, Message, Call, or Video) and the preferred number.

Call your favorites

You can easily call people you marked as favorites in the Contacts app or the Phone app.

1. Go to the Phone app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Favorites, then tap the contact you want to call.

This immediately calls the contact at the preferred number you entered for them in Favorites.

On [models with Dual SIM](#), iPhone chooses the line for the call in the following order:

- The preferred line for this contact (if set)
 - The line used for the last call to or from this contact
 - The default voice line
3. To manage your Favorites list, do any of the following:

- *Add a favorite:* Tap Favorites, tap  [Alt text: the Add button] , then choose a contact.
- *Rearrange or delete favorites:* Tap Edit.

Redial or return a recent call

Siri: Say something like: “Redial that last number” or “Return my last call.” [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

You can also do the following:

1. Go to the Phone app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Recents, then tap a name or number in the Recents list.

The call begins as soon as you tap.

3. To get more info about a call and the caller, tap  [Alt text: the Info button] next to the name or phone number in Recents.

A red badge indicates the number of missed calls.

Call someone on your contacts list

Siri: Say something like: “Call Eliza’s mobile.” [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Or do the following:

1. Go to the Phone app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Contacts at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap the contact, then tap the phone number you want to call.

On [models with Dual SIM](#), the default voice line is used for the call unless you set a preferred line for this contact.

WARNING: For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see [Important safety information for iPhone.](#)

Related

[Answer or decline incoming calls on iPhone](#)

Change your Phone settings

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, change your settings for outgoing phone calls.

Change your outgoing call settings

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Phone.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Turn on Show My Caller ID:* (GSM) Your phone number is shown in My Number. For FaceTime calls, your phone number is displayed even if caller ID is turned off.
 - *Turn on Dial Assist for international calls:* (GSM) When Dial Assist is turned on, iPhone automatically adds the correct international or local prefix when you call your contacts and favorites.

For information about making international calls (including rates and other charges that may apply), contact your carrier.

Hide your Caller ID

You can prevent your Caller ID information from showing on outgoing calls on iPhone.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Phone.
2. Tap Show My Caller ID, then turn off Show My Caller ID.

Note: If you don't see Show My Caller ID, your carrier may not allow you to turn off your caller ID information.

Prioritize caller identification apps

There are multiple main sources for identifying incoming callers. Sources of caller ID information include:

- *Contacts:* The people in your Contacts app.
- *Share Name and Photo:* Callers who have turned on Name & Photo Sharing in Settings > Apps > Share Name and Photo.
- *Carrier Call Directory:* Caller information identified by supported carriers.
- *Business Call Identification:* Caller information identified by Apple Business Connect or your cellular provider.
- *Call Identification apps:* Any caller information identified by supported caller ID apps.

If you have additional call identification apps installed, you can prioritize them for identifying incoming calls and reorder them at any point. For example you might want one caller identification app to be the preferred one and the others to come into play only if the primary app can't identify the caller.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Phone.
2. Tap Call Blocking & Identification, then tap Edit at the top of the screen.
3. Drag  [Alt text: the Sort button] to reorder the priority of the apps.

Turn on Dial Assist

Dial assist automatically determines the correct international or local prefix when dialing.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Phone.
2. Scroll down, then turn on Dial Assist.

Related

[Change your outgoing call settings](#)

[Hide your Caller ID](#)

[Prioritize caller identification apps](#)

NAV TITLE: [View and delete the call history](#)

View and delete your call history on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: You can view your call history on your iPhone and delete all your recent calls or just specific calls.

You can view your call history on your iPhone and delete all your recent calls or just specific calls.

Delete your call history

1. Go to the Phone app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Recents, tap Edit, then tap Select.
3. Do any of the following:
 - *Clear all history:* Tap Clear, then tap Clear All Recents.
 - *Clear a single call:* Tap  [Alt text: the Delete button] next to the call, then tap  [Alt text: the Delete button] .

You can also tap Recents, then swipe a recent call all the way to the left.

To recover a deleted call history, [restore your iPhone](#) from a backup you made before the data was deleted.

Get more details about your call history

1. Go to the Phone app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Recents, then tap a name or number in your call history to view information about call length, time of call, and whether the call was incoming or outgoing.

Note: Your carrier may have more information about deleted calls or older call histories.

NAV TITLE: [Answer or decline incoming calls](#)

Answer or decline incoming calls on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, you can answer, silence, or decline an incoming call; send a call to voicemail, respond with a text, and reminder yourself to return the call.

You can answer, silence, or decline an incoming call. If you decline a call, it goes to voicemail. You can respond with a text or remind yourself to return the call.

Answer a call

Do one of the following:

- Tap  [Alt text: the Answer Call button] .
- If iPhone is locked, drag the slider.

Tip: You can have Siri [announce incoming calls](#), which you can accept or decline using your voice.

Silence a call

Press the side button or either volume button when a call is coming in.

You can still answer a silenced call until it goes to voicemail.

Decline a call and send it directly to voicemail

Do one of the following for an incoming call:

- Press the side button twice quickly.
- Tap  [Alt text: the Decline Call button] .
- Swipe up on the call banner.

You can also swipe down on the call banner for more options.

Do any of the following:

- Tap Remind Me, then choose when you want a reminder to return the call.
- Tap Message, then choose a default reply or tap Custom.

To create your own default replies, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Phone > Respond with Text, tap any field below Respond With, then type your own reply.

Note: In some countries or regions, declined calls are disconnected without being sent to voicemail.

Related

[While on a call on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [While on a call](#)

While on a call on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: While you're on a call, you can switch the audio to the speaker or a Bluetooth device.

When you're on a phone call on iPhone, you can switch the audio to the speaker or a Bluetooth® device.

Adjust the audio during a call

To change the volume, press the volume buttons on the side of iPhone. Or swipe down on the call banner, then do any of the following:

- *Mute:* Tap the Mute button.
- *Put the call on hold:* Touch and hold the Mute button.
- *Talk handsfree:* Tap the Audio button, then choose an audio destination.

Use another app while on a call

1. [Go to the Home Screen](#), then open the app.
2. To return to the call, tap the green call indicator at the top of the screen.

Respond to a second call on the same line

If you're on a call and receive a second call, do one of the following:

- *Ignore the call and send it to voicemail:* Tap Ignore.
- *End the first call and answer the new one:* When using a GSM network, tap End + Accept. With a CDMA network, tap End; when the second call rings back, tap Accept, or drag the slider if iPhone is locked.

- *Put the first call on hold and answer the new one:* Tap Hold + Accept.

To switch between calls when you have a call on hold, tap Swap to switch between calls, or tap Merge Calls to talk with both parties at once. See [Start a conference or three-way call](#).

Note: With CDMA, you can't switch between calls if the second call was outgoing, but you can merge the calls. You can't merge calls if the second call was incoming. If you end the second call or the merged call, both calls end.

On [models with Dual SIM](#), note the following:

- Wi-Fi Calling must be turned on for a line to enable that line to receive calls while the other line is in use for a call. If you receive a call on one line while the other is in use for a call, and no Wi-Fi connection is available, iPhone uses the cellular data of the line that's in use for the call to receive the other line's call. Charges may apply. The line that's in use for the call must be permitted for data use in your Cellular Data settings (either as the default line, or as the non-default line with Allow Cellular Data Switching turned on) to receive the other line's call.
- If you don't turn on Wi-Fi Calling for a line, any incoming phone calls on that line (including calls from emergency services) go directly to voicemail (if available from your carrier) when the other line is in use; you won't receive missed call notifications.

If you set up conditional call forwarding (if available from your carrier) from one line to another when a line is busy or not in service, the calls don't go to voicemail; contact your carrier for setup information.

Related

[Set up your voicemail on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Have a conference or three-way call on iPhone](#)

Have a conference or three-way call on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: While on a call on iPhone, you can add an additional caller or callers.

When you're on a phone call, you can add an additional caller or callers if you want to include more people in the conversation. If you get another incoming call, you can also respond to or ignore it.

Start a conference or three-way call

With GSM, you can set up a conference call with up to five people (depending on your carrier).

Note: Conference calls may not be available if your call is using VoLTE (Voice over LTE) or Wi-Fi Calling.

1. Go to the Phone app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. While on a call on iPhone, tap Add Call, make another call, then tap Merge Calls.
Repeat this step to add more people to the call.
3. During the call, do any of the following:
 - *Talk privately with one person:* Tap ⓘ [ALT text: the More Info button] , then tap Private next to the name of the person. Tap Merge Calls to resume the conference call.
 - *Add an incoming caller on the same line:* Tap Hold Call + Answer, then tap Merge Calls.
 - *Drop one person:* Tap ⓘ [ALT text: the More Info button] next to the name of the person you want to drop, then tap End.

Related

[Set up your voicemail on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Set up voicemail](#)

Set up your voicemail on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, Visual Voicemail shows a list of your messages. You can choose which ones to play and delete without listening to all of them.

In the Phone app, Visual Voicemail and Live Voicemail show a list of your messages. You can choose which ones to play and delete without listening to all of them. A badge on the Voicemail icon indicates the number of unheard messages.

P9 [Voicemail transcription shows your messages transcribed into text. Transcription is limited to voicemails in English received on your iPhone with iOS 10 or later, and transcription depends on the quality of the recording. To view a transcribed voicemail, tap Voicemail in the Phone app.](#)

P10 **Note:** Voicemail, Visual Voicemail, and Voicemail transcription are available from select carriers in select countries or regions. P9 **Note:** Voicemail and Visual Voicemail are available from select carriers in select countries or regions.

Set up voicemail

The first time you tap Voicemail, you're asked to create a voicemail password and record your voicemail greeting.

1. Go to the Phone app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Voicemail, then tap Set Up Now.
3. Create a voicemail password.
4. Choose a greeting—Default or Custom; if you choose Custom, you can record a new greeting.

Turn on Live Voicemail

Live Voicemail lets you automatically see a real-time transcription as someone is leaving you a message. You can even pick up the call as they're leaving their voicemail.

To turn on Live Voicemail, do the following:

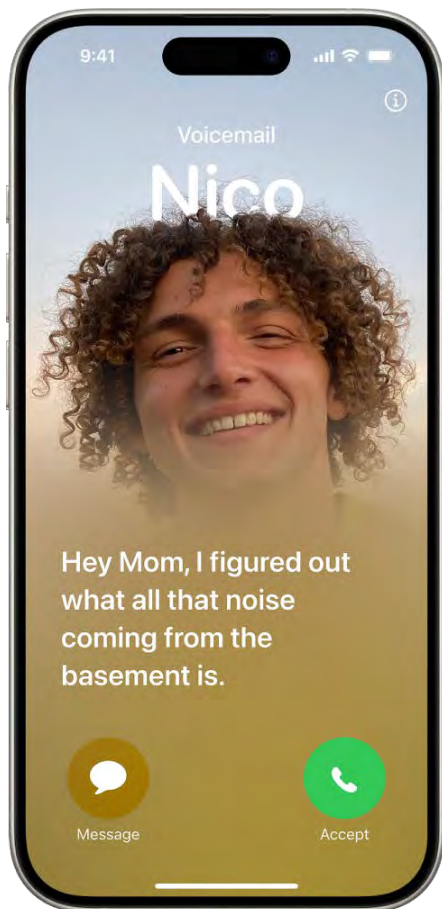
1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Phone.
2. Tap Live Voicemail, then turn on Live Voicemail.

When Live Voicemail is on, your iPhone answers an incoming call and displays the caller's voicemail. Data rates may apply. The caller won't be able to hear you and you won't be able to hear them unless you choose to answer the call.

If your iPhone is turned off or is out of your carrier network's range, the call is sent to carrier voicemail, if available.

If you have Silence Unknown Callers turned on, unknown numbers go directly to Live Voicemail without ringing you first. Calls identified as spam by your carrier don't go through Live Voicemail and are instead instantly declined.

Note: Live Voicemail isn't available in every region or language. See [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability](#).



[Alt text: A call screen showing a Live Voicemail from a contact named Nico. Below the transcribed text are Message and Accept buttons for the call.]

Store Voicemail in iCloud

You can store and sync your Live Voicemail and Carrier Voicemail in iCloud.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > iCloud.
2. Tap See All next to Saved to iCloud, then turn on Phone & FaceTime.

Related

[Check your voicemail on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Check voicemail](#)

Check your voicemail on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, play, share or delete voicemail messages. Visual Voicemail shows a list of your messages so you can choose which ones to play and delete without listening to all of them.

Use the Phone app to listen to, delete, or share your voicemail messages. You can also check your voicemail messages when Visual Voicemail isn't available.

Play, share, or delete a voicemail message

Siri: Say something like: "Play the voicemail from Eliza." [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Or do the following:

1. Go to the Phone app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Voicemail, then tap a message.
3. Do any of the following:

- *Play the message:* Tap  [Alt text: the Play button] .

Messages are saved until you delete them (or until your carrier erases them, if they're not stored in iCloud).

- *Share the message:* Tap  [Alt text: the Share button] .
- *Delete the message:* Tap  [Alt text: the Delete button] .

Important: In some countries or regions, deleted messages may be permanently erased by your carrier. Your voice messages may also be deleted if you change your SIM card.

To recover a deleted message, tap Deleted Messages, tap the message, then tap Undelete.

Check your messages when Visual Voicemail isn't available

- *On your iPhone:* Tap Voicemail, then follow the instructions.
- *On another phone:* Dial your own mobile number, press * or # (depending on your carrier) to bypass your greeting, then enter your voicemail password.

Related

[Change your voicemail greeting and settings on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Change voicemail greeting and settings](#)

Change your voicemail greeting and settings on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In the Phone app, you can change your voicemail greeting, password, and alert sounds.

You can change your voicemail greeting, password, and alert sounds.

1. Go to the Phone app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following to change your voicemail settings:
 - *Change your greeting:* Tap Voicemail, tap Greeting, tap Custom, then tap Record (not supported by all carriers or in all countries and regions).
 - *Change your voicemail password:* Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Phone > Change Voicemail Password, then enter the new password.

If you forgot your voicemail password, contact your wireless carrier.
 - *Change the alert for new voicemail:* Go to Settings > Sounds & Haptics, then tap New Voicemail.

Note: To change your Contact Photo & Poster, see [Add or edit your photo and poster](#).

Related

[Select ringtones and vibrations on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Select ringtones and vibrations](#)

Select ringtones and vibrations on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, set the default ringtone and assign different ringtones to certain people. You can also use vibrations and turn the ringer off.

You can set the default ringtone and assign distinctive ringtones to certain people. You can also use vibrations and turn the ringer off.

Change the alert tones and vibrations

See [Change iPhone sounds and vibrations](#).

iPhone comes with ringtones that play for incoming calls. You can also [purchase more ringtones in the iTunes Store](#).

Assign a different ringtone to a contact

1. Open the Contacts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Select a contact, tap Edit, tap Ringtone, then choose a ringtone.

Turn the ringer on or off

- On [supported models](#): [Open Control Center](#), then tap  [ALT N/A] .

You can also configure the Action Button to turn the ringer on or off. See [Customize the Action button](#).

- On other models: Flip the Ring/Silent switch to turn Silent mode on or off.

Clock alarms still play when Silent mode is turned on.

To temporarily silence incoming calls, [Turn on or schedule a Focus on iPhone](#).

Related

[Make calls using Wi-Fi on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Make calls using Wi-Fi](#)

Make calls using Wi-Fi on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: When iPhone has a low or weak cellular signal, use Wi-Fi Calling to make and receive calls through Wi-Fi.

When your iPhone has a low cellular signal, use Wi-Fi Calling to make and receive calls through a Wi-Fi network.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Cellular.
2. If your iPhone has Dual SIM, choose a line (below SIMs).
3. Tap Wi-Fi Calling, then turn on Wi-Fi Calling on This iPhone.
4. Enter or confirm your address for emergency services.

Note: Emergency calls on your iPhone are routed through cellular service when available. In the event that cellular service isn't available, and you have enabled Wi-Fi Calling, emergency calls may be made over Wi-Fi, and your device's location information may be used for emergency calls to aid response efforts, regardless of whether you enable Location Services. Some carriers may use the address you registered with the carrier when signing up for Wi-Fi Calling as your location. When connected to Wi-Fi calling, your iPhone may not receive emergency alerts.

When Wi-Fi Calling is available, “Wi-Fi” is displayed after your carrier name in the [status bar](#), and all your calls go through Wi-Fi.

Note: If the Wi-Fi connection is lost when you make calls, calls switch automatically to your carrier’s cellular network using VoLTE (Voice over LTE), if available and turned on. See [View or change cellular data settings](#). (VoLTE calls also switch to Wi-Fi when a Wi-Fi connection becomes available.) Contact your carrier for feature availability.

Related

[Set up call forwarding on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Set up call forwarding](#)

Set up call forwarding on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, set up call forwarding (on GSM networks).

You can set up call forwarding on iPhone if you have cellular service through a GSM network.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

If you have cellular service through a CDMA network, contact your carrier for information about setting up call forwarding.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Phone.
2. Tap Call Forwarding, then turn on Call Forwarding.

The Call Forwarding icon  [ALT N/A] appears in the [status bar](#) when call forwarding is on.

3. On [models with Dual SIM](#), choose a line.
4. Tap Forward To, enter the number you want to redirect to, then tap Back.

You must be in range of the cellular network when you set iPhone to forward calls, or calls won’t be forwarded.

If your carrier supports conditional call forwarding when the line is busy or not in service, contact them for setup information.

Related

[Block or avoid unwanted calls on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Set up call waiting](#)

Set up call waiting on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, set up call waiting (on GSM networks).

You can set up call waiting on iPhone if you have cellular service through a GSM network.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

If you have cellular service through a CDMA network, contact your carrier for information about setting up call waiting.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Phone.
2. Tap Call Waiting, then turn on Call Waiting.

If you're on a call and call waiting is turned off, incoming calls go directly to voicemail.

On models with Dual SIM, call waiting works only for incoming calls on the same line, unless the other line has Wi-Fi Calling turned on and a data connection is available. See [Set up cellular service on iPhone](#).

Related

[Block or avoid unwanted calls on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Block or avoid unwanted calls](#)

Block or avoid unwanted calls on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, avoid unwanted calls by blocking specific numbers and sending unknown and spam callers directly to voicemail.

You can avoid unwanted calls by identifying callers, blocking certain people, and sending unknown and spam callers directly to voicemail.

Turn on Call Identification

iPhone can help identify incoming calls using information from Apple Business Connect, your cellular carrier, and supported call identification apps.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Phone.
2. Tap Call Blocking & Identification, then turn on one or more of the following:
 - *Business Connect ID*: Caller information is identified by Apple Business Connect.
 - *Carrier Call ID*: Caller information is identified by supported carriers.
 - *Call Identification apps*: Caller information is identified by supported caller ID apps.

Block voice calls, FaceTime calls, and messages from certain people

1. Go to the Phone app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Favorites, Recents, or Voicemail.
3. Tap the number or contact you want to block, scroll down, then tap Block Caller.

Unblock a blocked contact

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Phone.
2. Tap Blocked Contacts, then tap Edit.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Remove button] , then tap Unblock.

Send unknown and spam callers to voicemail

Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Phone, then tap any of the following:

- *Silence Unknown Callers*: You get notifications for calls from people in your contacts, recent outgoing calls, and Siri Suggestions.
- *Call Blocking & Identification*: Turn on Silence Junk Callers (available with certain carriers) to silence calls identified by your carrier as potential spam or fraud.

Related

[While on a call on iPhone](#)

Photos

NAV TITLE: [Get started with Photos](#)

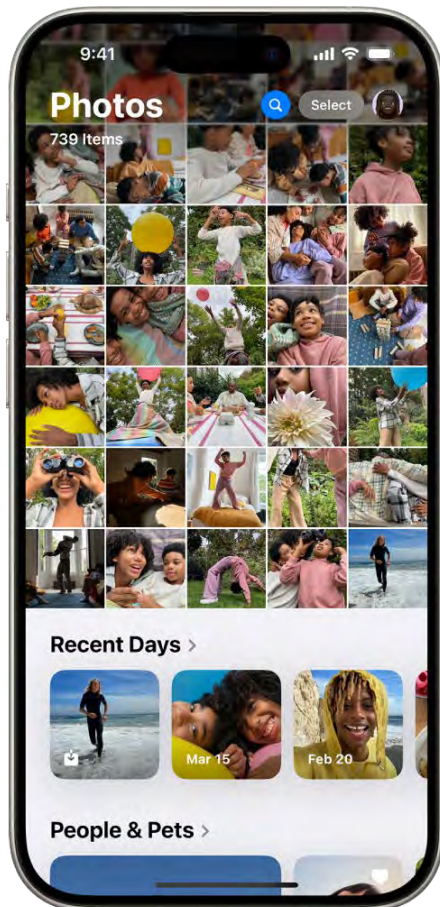
Get started with Photos on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, learn the basics to get started quickly.

Use Photos  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone to find your photos, enjoy your memories, and share your best shots. Here's how to get started.

Browse the photos in your library



[Alt text: The Photos app is open. The top two-thirds of the screen has the photo library in a grid. Below that is the Recent Days collection of photos, and below that is the People & Pets collection.]

To get started viewing your photos and videos, go to the Photos app. Swipe down on the photo grid to browse through your library. The most recent photos are at the bottom; keep swiping down to go back in time. You can pinch the screen to zoom in or out.

Enjoy your memories



[Alt text: The Photos app is open to the Memories collection. The All tab is selected, with a list of memories below.]

Relive your favorite memories with a personalized collection of photos and videos set to music that plays like a movie. Scroll down and tap a memory. Each memory features photos from your library curated around a theme—like a person, pet, place, event, or activity.

Edit your photos

To make your photos stand out, adjust light and color, crop, rotate, add a filter, and more. Open a photo or video, then tap  [Alt text: the Edit button] to start editing.



[Alt text: The Edit screen with a photo in the center. At the bottom of the screen, from left to right, are the Adjust, Filters, and Crop buttons. The Adjust button is selected and there is a slider to adjust Brilliance. The Cancel button is in the top-left corner of the screen and the Done button is in the top-right corner.]

Share your photos



[Alt text: A selected photo is displayed in the top half of the iPhone screen, with a row of share options below. Below the share options are other actions that can be made to the photo, including Copy Photo, Add to Shared Album, Add to Album, and AirPlay.]

Open a photo or video, tap  [Alt text: the Share button], then choose a share option like Mail, Messages, or AirDrop. To share all the photos and videos in a collection, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Share Photos.

Want to learn more?

- [View photos and videos](#)
- [Find and name people and pets](#)
- [Customize the Photos app](#)
- [Watch memories](#)
- [Edit photos and videos](#)

NAV TITLE: [View photos and videos](#)

View photos and videos in Photos on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, view photos and videos and browse through your photos and videos in the library.

Use the Photos app to view photos and videos on your iPhone.

View individual photos



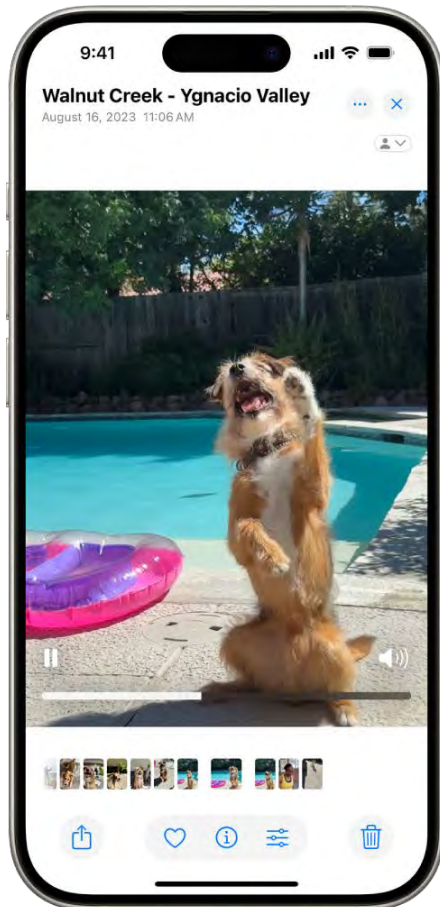
[Alt text: A photo with thumbnails of other photos across the bottom of the screen. At the top right is the Close button, which takes you back to the view in which you were browsing. Along the bottom of the screen, from left to right, are the Share, Favorite, Info, Edit, and Delete buttons.]

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo to view it in full screen.

Tip: When viewing a [Live Photo](#)  [Alt text: the Live Photo button] , touch and hold the photo to play it.

3. Tap  [Alt text: the Close button] to close the photo and continue browsing your library.

Play a video



[Alt text: A video player is in the center of the screen. At the bottom of the video, from left to right, are the Play/Pause button, a progress bar, and the Mute/Volume button. Along the bottom of the screen, from left to right, are the Share, Favorite, Info, Edit, and Delete buttons.]

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a video to play it.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Close button] to close the video and continue browsing your library.

Browse the library

When you open the Photos app  [ALT N/A] , your library of photos and videos appears in a grid in the top half of the screen. Swipe down to see more photos. The most recent photos are at the bottom; continue swiping down to go back in time.

Tip: While you're viewing the library, pinch the screen to zoom in or out.

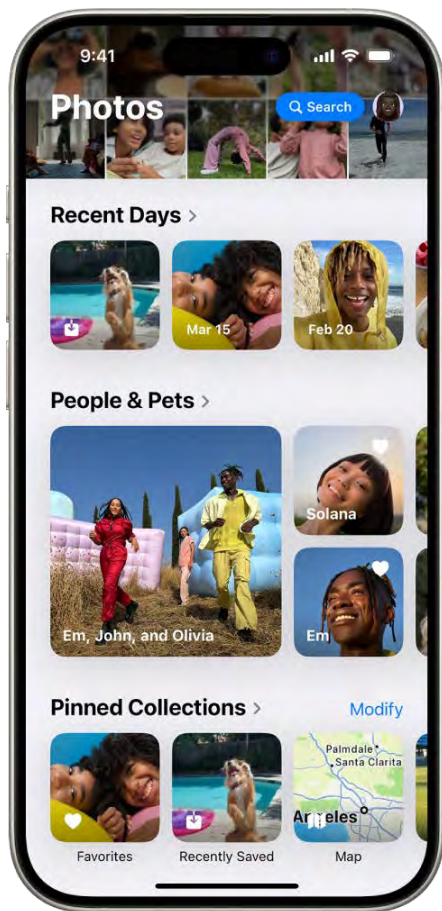


[Alt text: The Photos app is open to the photo library grid. At the bottom of the screen, from left to right, are options to sort the library, including Filter, Years, Months, and All. In the bottom right corner is the Close button to exit the library.]

Browse collections

Below your library, your photos and videos are organized into curated collections like Recent Days, Trips, and People & Pets. Under each heading, you can scroll through recent collections, or tap the heading to see more.

Tap a collection to open it and see the detailed view with highlights from the collection. Swipe right or left to see other collections in that section.



[Alt text: The Photos app is open. The top of the screen has the photo library in a grid. Below that are Recent Days, People & Pets, and Pinned Collections.]

Related

[Search for photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[Edit photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[See photo and video information on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [See photo and video information](#)

See photo and video information on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, view metadata about a photo or video, like the date and time it was taken, the people identified, and any special camera metadata.

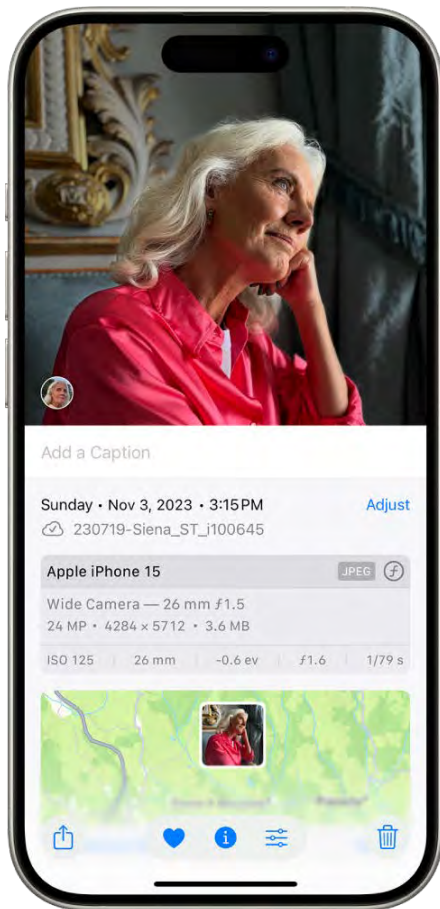
You can see saved metadata information about a photo or video in the Photos app.

View photo and video metadata

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the photo or video whose metadata you want to see, then swipe up or tap  [Alt text: the Info button] .

Depending on the photo or video, you see the following details:

- People identified in the photo
- A caption field to describe the photo or video, and make it easier to find in Search
- Items detected by [Visual Look Up](#)
- What device captured the photo or video
- The date and time the photo or video was taken (tap Adjust to edit the date and time)
- Camera metadata such as lens, shutter speed, file size, and more
- Where the photo or video was taken (tap the link to view the location in Maps; tap Adjust to edit the location)
- Who shared the photo or video with you, if it was shared
- What albums this photo is in



[Alt text: A photo is open in the Photos app. The bottom half of the screen shows photo information including, from top to bottom, the date and time, the filename, the iPhone model and camera settings, and a map of the location where the photo was taken. Along the bottom of the screen, from left to right, are the Share, Favorite, Info, Edit, and Delete buttons.]

Change the date, time, or location

You can change the date, time, and location that's stored within the photo or video's metadata information. See [See photo and video information](#).

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo or video to open it, then tap  [Alt text: the More button] .
3. Tap Adjust Date & Time or Adjust Location.

To change the date, time, or location of a batch of photos, tap Select, tap the thumbnails you want to change, then follow the steps above.

To revert a photo or video to its original date, time, or location, tap  [Alt text: the More button] , tap Adjust Date & Time or Adjust Location, then tap Revert.

Related

[View photos and videos in Photos on iPhone](#)

[Find photos and videos by date on iPhone](#)

Find your photos and videos

NAV TITLE: [Find photos and videos by date](#)

Find photos and videos by date on iPhone

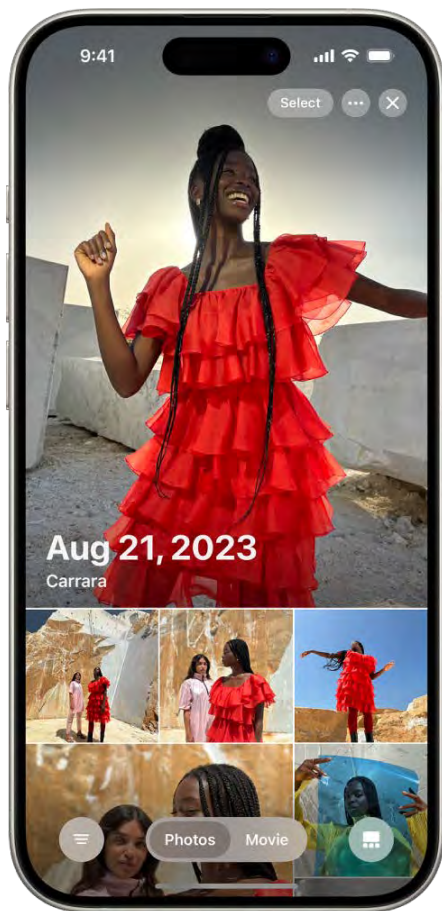
Metadata

Summary: Use the Photos app on iPhone to find photos and videos taken on a particular date.

You can find and browse the photos and videos taken on a particular date—year, month, or day—in the Photos app.

View photos and videos you took on a recent day

You can find the photos and videos you took on a particular day in the Recent Days collection (below the photo library).



[Alt text: A Day is open in the Photos app, a collection of photos taken that day.]

1. Go to the Photos app 📷 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down to Recent Days and tap a day to see photos and videos from that day.

Swipe left or right to quickly move to other days.

When you open a day in Recent Days, you see a summary of the best photos from the day. To see all the photos you took that day, tap 📷 [Alt text: the Summary button] , then tap All.

Browse through your library by year or month

1. Go to the Photos app 📷 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Swipe down on the photo grid to open the library, then tap one of the following near the bottom of the screen:
 - *Years*: Quickly locate a specific year in your photo library.
 - *Months*: View collections of photos that you took throughout a month, organized by significant events—like a family outing, social occasion, birthday party, or trip.

Years and Months views are curated to show your best shots, and visual clutter like similar photos, screenshots, whiteboards, and receipts aren't shown. To see every photo and video, tap All.

You can also search for a specific date. See [Search for photos and videos](#).

Related

[View photos and videos in Photos on iPhone](#)

[Find recently saved photos on iPhone](#)

[Filter and sort the photo library on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Find and name people and pets](#)

Find and name people and pets in Photos on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Use Photos on iPhone to find and name the people, dogs, and cats that appear in your photos and in People & Pets.

The Photos app sorts photos and videos of people, dogs, and cats in the People & Pets album (or the People album if no pets appear). You can name a person, dog, or cat directly from a photo or video in your photo library, or in the People & Pets album.

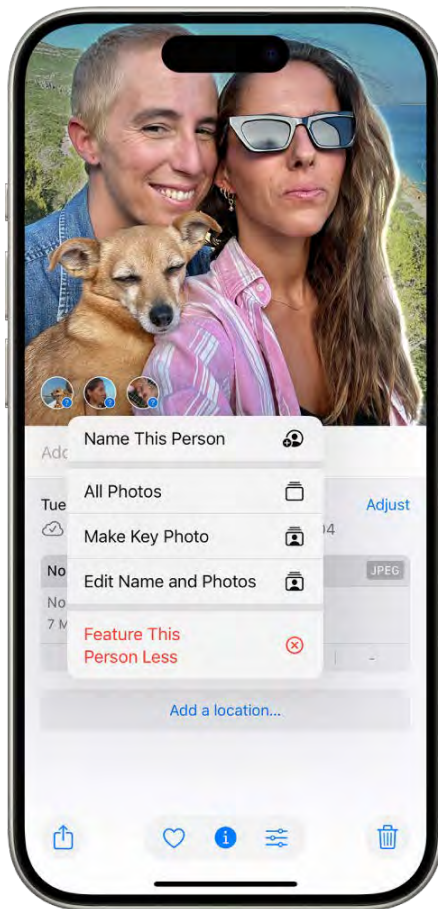
Name a person or pet in a photo or video

When you name a person or pet in a photo or video, they're automatically added to People & Pets and identified in other photos and videos in your library.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo or video, then swipe up to see the details.

People or pets recognized in the photo or video appear in the bottom-left corner. A question mark appears next to those you haven't named.

3. Tap the person or pet with a question mark next to their picture, then tap Name This Person or Name This Pet.

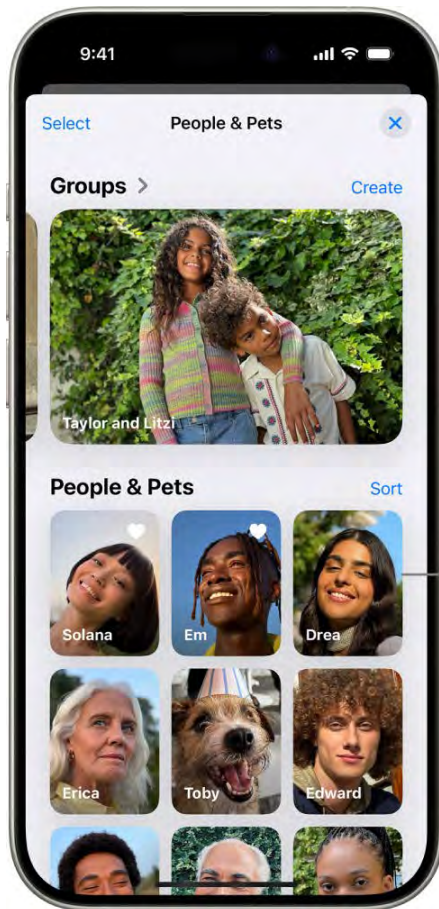


[Alt text: The top half of the iPhone screen shows a photo open in the Photos app. In the bottom-left corner of the photo are question marks next to the people and pets that appear in the photo. A question mark is selected and a menu of options includes, from top to bottom, Name This Person, All Photos, Make Key Photo, Edit Name and Photos, and Feature This Person Less.]

4. Enter their name, then tap Done.

Name a person or pet in the People & Pets collection

1. Go to the Photos app 📷 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Below the photo library, tap People & Pets, then tap the person or pet you want to name.



Tap to name people and pets identified in your photos.

[Alt text: The People & Pets collection in the Photos app. Groups appear at the top, and people and pets are listed below.]

3. Tap Name This Person or Name This Pet, then enter their name.
4. Tap Done.

If you want to name a person or pet that hasn't been identified, tap Add People at the bottom of People & Pets.

To create and edit groups, see [Find group photos](#).

Change the key photo for a person or pet

You can choose which photo to show in the People & Pets collection. This is the photo you tap to see all the photos and videos of that person or pet.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap People & Pets, then tap a person or pet.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Show Faces.
4. Touch and hold a photo, then tap Make Key Photo.

Mark a person or pet as a favorite

Mark the people or pets that you interact with the most as favorites so that it's easier to find them.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap People & Pets.
3. Touch and hold a person or pet, then tap Favorite.

To unfavorite a person or pet, touch and hold their key photo in People & Pets, then tap Unfavorite.

Fix misidentifications

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap People & Pets, then tap the misidentified person or pet.
3. Do one of the following:
 - *Rename the person or pet for all items:* Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , tap the name, then edit it. Tap Done.
 - *Fix a specific item:* Tap the photo or video that's misidentified, tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap This is Not [name].

You can also fix misidentifications while viewing a photo in your library. Swipe up to see the photo information. Tap the misidentified person or pet in the bottom-left corner of the photo, then tap This is Not [name].

Sort People & Pets alphabetically or manually

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap People & Pets, tap Sort, then choose one of the following:
 - *Sort alphabetically:* Tap Name.
 - *Sort manually:* Tap Custom, then touch and hold a key photo and drag it to a new position.

Remove a person or pet

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap People & Pets, then touch and hold the person or pet you want to remove.
3. Tap Hide [name].

Tip: If you prefer, you can feature a person or pet less frequently instead of removing them. See [Show a person less frequently or not at all](#).

When you use [iCloud Photos](#), People & Pets is kept up to date on all your devices. See [Turn on iCloud Photos](#).

Related

[Search for photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[Watch memories in Photos on iPhone](#)

[Find group photos in Photos on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Find group photos](#)

Find group photos in Photos on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Use Photos on your iPhone to view and create collections for groups of people that often appear in your group photos and videos.

The Photos app recognizes groups of people and pets who often appear together in pictures and videos, and sorts them into group collections. For example, if you have many pictures of your family or group of friends, Photos creates a collection for each of those groups.



[Alt text: Groups is open in the People & Pets section of the Photos App. The screen has a list of collections; each label with the names of the people included in the group.]

Find group photos and videos

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap People & Pets.
3. Below Groups, swipe to find a group, then tap it to see all your photos with that group.

Tip: To see photos with the group members and other people, tap  [Alt text: the Filter button], tap View Options, then tap Include Other People.

To share the photos in the group, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Share Photos.

Create a group

You can create a group with any combination of people and pets from the People & Pets collection.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap People & Pets.

3. To the right of Groups, tap Create.
4. Select the people and pets you want in the group, then tap Add.
5. Tap the default name and type a custom name for the group, then tap Done.

Edit or delete a group

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap People & Pets.
3. Below Groups, touch and hold the group you want to edit, then do any of the following:
 - *Rename the group:* Tap Edit Name and People, then type a new name.
 - *Add or remove people:* Tap Edit Name and People. To remove someone, tap  [Alt text: the Remove button] at the top-right corner of their picture. Tap Add People to add someone.
 - *Edit the group photo:* Tap Edit Name and People, then tap Edit Key Photo.
 - *Delete the group:* Tap Delete This Group.

Change the order of groups

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap People & Pets.
3. Touch and hold a group, then drag it to a new position.

Related

[Find and name people and pets in Photos on iPhone](#)

[Share photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone](#)

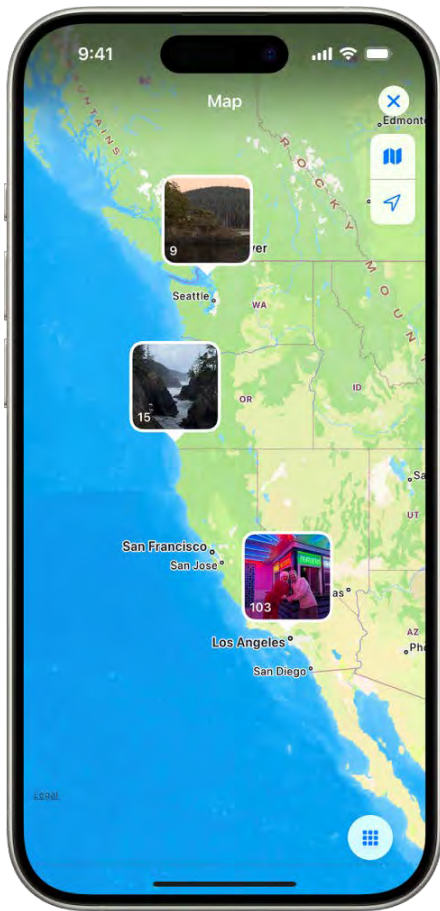
NAV TITLE: [Browse photos by location](#)

Browse photos by location on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, the Map collection organizes your photos and videos so you can view them by location.

The Photos app creates collections of your photos and videos based on where they were taken. You can use the Map view to see photos taken in a specific location, look for photos taken nearby, and see collections of photos on a map.



[Alt text: The Map is open in the Photos app, with locations highlighted. The number of photos taken in each location is listed.]

Browse photos by location

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In Pinned Collections, tap Map.

Only pictures and videos that have embedded location information (GPS data) are included.

Tip: Pinch the map to zoom in and out, or drag to see more locations.

See where a photo was taken

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo, then swipe up to [see photo and video information](#).
3. Tap the map or address link to see more details.

Tip: To see more photos from this location, tap Show Nearby Photos.

To change the location or address where the photo was taken, see [Change the date, time, or location](#).

Related

[Find your travel photos on iPhone](#)

[Search for photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[Share photos and videos on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Find recently saved photos](#)

Find recently saved photos on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, find all the photos you've saved from other apps—like Messages, Safari, and Mail—in the Recently Saved collection.

You can find all the photos you've saved from other apps—like Messages, Safari, and Mail—in the Recently Saved collection. Photos and videos AirDropped to you also appear here.

Find recently saved photos

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
 - In Pinned Collections, tap Recently Saved.
 - Swipe down on the grid, tap  [Alt text: the Filter button], then tap Sort by Recently Added.

To see where you saved a photo or video from, open it, then swipe up to see information about the photo.

Tip: To see photos you saved today, tap  [Alt text: the first collection] in Recent Days.

Related

[Find receipts, QR codes, recently edited photos, and more on iPhone](#)

[Find screenshots, Live Photos, and more by media type on iPhone](#)

[Back up and sync your photos with iCloud](#)

NAV TITLE: [Find your travel photos](#)

Find your travel photos on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Use Photos on your iPhone to quickly find photos from your trips grouped into collections.

In the Photos app, you can quickly find photos and videos from your trips grouped into collections, based on location data from the photos.



[Alt text: Trips is open in the Photos app. Along the top of the screen is a list of years. All is selected, and below it are collections of photos, each from a different trip.]

1. Go to the Photos app 📷 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down to Trips, then tap the trip collection you want to view.

To find travel photos from an older trip, tap Trips, then choose a year to browse.

Related

[Watch memories in Photos on iPhone](#)

[Browse photos by location on iPhone](#)

[Share photos and videos on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Find recently receipts, QR codes, recently edited photos, and more](#)

Find receipts, QR codes, recently edited photos, and more on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, find collections of photos like receipts, QR codes, recently edited photos, and more.

In the Photos app, you can find collections of photos and videos in Utilities. You can easily revisit photos you recently edited, saved, viewed, or shared, or find collections of photos based on the content of the photo—like documents, receipts, handwriting, illustrations, and QR codes.

Find receipts, QR codes, and more in Utilities

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down, then tap Utilities.
3. Tap the collection you want to view.

Note: Some Utilities collections, like Hidden and Recently Deleted, are locked by default for your privacy. To learn more, see [Lock and unlock the Recently Deleted and Hidden albums](#).



[Alt text: In the Photos app, the Utilities collection is open, showing a list of collections of photos.]

Find recovered items and save or delete them

If a photo or video didn't save properly and couldn't be added to your library, you may find a copy of it in Recovered.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down, then tap Utilities.
3. Tap Recovered, then tap the photo or video you want to recover.
4. Tap Permanently Delete or Restore to library.

Important: When you delete a recovered photo or video, it's immediate and permanent. You will not be able to recover photos later that you deleted from the Recovered collection in Utilities.

Related

[Search for photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[Find recently saved photos on iPhone](#)

[Find screenshots, Live Photos, and more by media type on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Find photos, videos, and more by media type](#)

Find screenshots, Live Photos, and more by media type on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, find what you're looking for by media type.

In the Photos app, you can find what you're looking for by media type. For example, browse all your portrait photos or time-lapse videos in one place.

- COMMENT - @Aaron and @Della—They could also swipe left, but I recommend leaving what I have below. It's a little easier for a user to read and understand than "Below Media Types, swipe left until you see the type of photo or video you want to view, then tap it." What do you think?

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down, then tap Media Types.
3. Tap the type of photo or video you want to view.



[Alt text: In the Photos App, the Media Types collection is open, showing a list of collections of photos.]

Related

[Search for photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[Find recently saved photos on iPhone](#)

[Find receipts, QR codes, recently edited photos, and more on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Customize the Photos app](#)

Customize the Photos app on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, choose the order of collections and albums to personalize the app the way you like it.

You can remove, reorder, and pin collections to lay out the app the way you like it.

Reorder collections

You can change the order of collections so that the items you use most frequently are the first thing you see below the photo grid. For example, if you frequently view your photo albums, you can move them above other collections.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll to the bottom of the app, then tap Customize & Reorder.
3. Drag the collections into a new order.

Hide or unhide a collection

You can hide any collections you don't want displayed. When you hide a collection, none of your photos are lost. You can unhide the collection at any time to view the photos in it.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll to the bottom of the app, then tap Customize & Reorder.
3. Deselect the collections you want to hide.
4. To unhide a collection, reselect the box.

To reset all your collections back to the default, tap Reset.

Pin a collection

You can choose what collections and albums appear in the Pinned Collections, to make them easy to find.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down, then tap Pinned Collections.
3. Tap Modify, then do any of the following:
 - *Remove a pinned collection:* Tap  [Alt text: the Remove button] , then tap Delete.
 - *Pin a collection:* Tap the suggested collection you want to add, or tap Any Collection or Album to see more options.
 - *Reorder pinned collections:* Drag the collections into a new order.

Note: The collections with a  [Alt text: the Remove button] next to them are currently in your pinned collections. The collections with  [Alt text: the Add button] next to them are not yet pinned.

Set the background color of Edit mode

By default, the background of Edit mode is dark if your iPhone is in dark mode, and light if it's in light mode. You can choose to change the background color of Edit mode—for example, set it to always be in dark mode if you prefer to edit photos against a dark background.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo or video to open it, then tap  [Alt text: the Edit button] .
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , tap Appearance, then choose one of the following:
 - *Make Edit mode match your iPhone's systemwide light mode or dark mode setting:* Tap System.
 - *Make Edit mode always appear dark:* Tap Dark.
 - *Make Edit mode always appear light:* Tap Light.

Reset suggestions and hide or show featured content

You can reset suggested memories, people & pets suggestions, and turn featured content and holiday events on or off.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
3. Do any of the following:
 - *Hide featured content and memories:* Turn off Show Featured Content to prevent Photos from automatically generating featured photos and memories.
 - *Turn off holiday events:* Turn off Show Holiday Events to prevent Photos from creating memories and featured content about holidays.
 - *Reset memories:* Tap Resent Suggested Memories to bring back any memories you altered or featured less.
 - *Reset people & pets:* Tap Reset People & Pets Suggestions to bring back any people or pets you featured less.

Turn off auto-play of videos and live photos

By default, videos and live photos automatically play when you see them in collections and albums. You can turn that feature on or off.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
3. Turn Auto-Play Motion on or off.

Turn off the preview view in collections and albums

By default, a preview of your best shots automatically play at the top of the screen when you open collections and albums. You can turn that feature on or off.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a collection or album, then tap  [Alt text: the More button] .

3. Tap Hide Preview.

To turn it back on, tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Show Preview.

Related

[Filter and sort the photo library on iPhone](#)

[Make your iPhone your own](#)

NAV TITLE: [Filter and sort the photo library](#)

Filter and sort the photo library on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, change how photos and videos in the library are sorted, filter the library to show only particular items, and change the layout of the photo grid.

To help you find the photos and videos you're looking for, you can change how items in the library are sorted, filter the library to show only particular items, and change the layout of the photo grid.

Choose how to sort the library

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Swipe down on the photo grid to browse through your library.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Filter button] , then choose how to sort items in your library:
 - *By when you took, imported, or saved each item:* Tap Sort by Recently Added. Photos and videos you added most recently appear at the bottom of the library.
 - *By when each item was originally captured:* Tap Sort by Date Captured. Photos and videos you save or import are organized by the date they were taken, not the date you saved them to the Photos app.

Filter the library

You can filter the library to only see particular items, and temporarily hide everything else.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Swipe down on the photo grid to browse through your library.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Filter button] , then tap Filter.
4. Choose one or more filters to apply.

You can apply multiple filters at the same time. For example, select Photos and Edited to see only photos you've edited.

5. To remove the filters and return to the full library, tap All Items.

Hide or unhide screenshots from the photo library

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Swipe down on the photo grid to browse through your library.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Filter button], then tap View Options.
4. Select Screenshots to allow screenshots to show in the photos library.

You can unselect screenshots at any time to hide them.

Change the layout of the photo grid

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Swipe down on the photo grid to browse through your library.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Filter button], then tap View Options.
4. Choose any of the following:
 - *Zoom In:* See each photo or video thumbnail larger.
 - *Zoom Out:* See more photos and video thumbnails at the same time.
 - *Aspect Ratio Grid:* View each photo or video thumbnail in its actual shape, horizontal or vertical. To return to the square thumbnail, tap Square Photo Grid.
 - *Hide Screenshots:* By default, screenshots show in the library. You can hide them to keep the focus on your photos and videos. Select Screenshots to unhide them.
 - *Show Shared with You:* Show photos and videos in the library that someone shared with you in Messages.

Related

[Customize the Photos app on iPhone](#)

[Make your iPhone your own](#)

[Filter and sort photos and videos in albums on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Back up and sync your photos with iCloud](#)

Back up and sync your photos with iCloud

Metadata

Summary: iCloud Photos keeps the photos and videos in the Photos app on your iPhone securely stored and up to date on all your devices.

You can use iCloud Photos to keep your photos and videos securely stored in iCloud. If you turn on iCloud Photos on all your devices, you can see the photos and videos you took on iPhone on any device. You can also access your iCloud photos and videos in a web browser.

When iCloud Photos is turned on, the photos and videos you take are uploaded automatically and stored in their original format at full resolution. Any changes you make to your photo collections on one device are reflected on your other devices, too.

Note: Make sure that you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#) on all your devices, and that your devices meet these minimum system requirements: iOS 8.3, iPadOS 13.1, macOS 10.10.3 or later, or a Windows device with iCloud for Windows 7.x or later.

To learn more, see [Set up iCloud Photos on all your devices](#).

Turn on iCloud Photos

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > iCloud.
2. Tap Photos, then turn on Sync this iPhone.

iCloud automatically uploads every photo and video you take to iCloud, so your photos are backed up and in sync, and you can access your library from any device, anytime.

Check if your photos are backed up to iCloud

You can check that iCloud Photos is syncing your photos to iCloud, so that you have copies if something happens to your iPhone.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In the top-right corner of the screen, you can see a preview of your syncing status. You may see any of the following:
 - *Yellow badge:* iCloud syncing is paused. Tap your account icon to see the details.
 - *Yellow warning icon:* Your iCloud storage is almost full. Tap your account icon to see the details.
 - *Red exclamation mark:* Your iCloud storage is full. See [Save space](#) or [Get more iCloud storage](#).
 - *Blue badge:* You have notifications a shared library or shared album. Tap your account icon to see the details.
 - *Partially filled blue circle around your account icon:* Photos are actively uploading to iCloud. Tap your account icon to see the details.

- *Partially filled gray outline around your account icon:* Uploads are paused. Tap your account icon to see the details.

If syncing is paused, your photos and videos are not fully backed up in iCloud. Tap your account, then tap Sync Now to resume backing up your photos to iCloud.

The last time your iPhone synced with iCloud appears below the account profile.

Save space on your iPhone

iCloud Photos can help you make the most of the storage space on your iPhone. When Optimize iPhone Storage is turned on, all your full-resolution photos and videos are stored in iCloud in their original formats, with storage-saving versions kept on your iPhone. Optimize iPhone Storage is turned on by default.

To turn it off, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > iCloud. Tap Photos, then tap Download and Keep Originals.

Get more iCloud storage

If your uploaded photos and videos exceed your storage plan, you can upgrade to iCloud+ for more storage and additional features. See [Subscribe to iCloud+](#).

Related

[Use iCloud on iPhone](#)

[iCloud User Guide: How iCloud keeps information up to date across all your devices](#)

[iCloud User Guide: Set up iCloud Photos on all your devices](#)

NAV TITLE: [Delete or hide photos and videos](#)

Delete or hide photos and videos on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Use the Photos app on your iPhone to delete, hide, and recover recently deleted photos and videos.

In the Photos app, you can delete photos and videos from your iPhone or hide them. You can also recover photos you recently deleted. Photos you delete and hide are saved in the Recently Deleted and Hidden albums, which you unlock using Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

When you [use iCloud photos](#), any photos you delete or hide are deleted or hidden on all your devices.

Delete or hide a photo or video

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. While viewing a photo or video, do any of the following:

- **Delete:** Tap  [Alt text: the Delete button] to delete a photo from your iPhone and other devices where iCloud Photos is turned on and you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

Deleted photos and videos are kept in the Recently Deleted album for 30 days. During that time, you can recover or permanently remove them from all devices.

- **Hide:** Tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Hide.

Hidden photos are moved to the Hidden folder. You can't view them anywhere else.

To turn off the Hidden collection so it doesn't appear in the Photos app, see [Hide the Hidden collection from view](#).

Delete or hide multiple photos and videos

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Swipe down to see the full photo grid, then tap Select.

3. Do any of the following:

- **Delete:** Tap  [Alt text: the Delete button] to delete the items from your iPhone and other devices where iCloud Photos is turned on and you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

Deleted photos and videos are kept in the Recently Deleted album for 30 days. During that time, you can recover or permanently remove them from all devices.

- **Hide:** Tap or drag your finger on the screen to select the items you want to hide, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Hide.

Unhide photos

You can unhide a photo you previously hid, and it will reappear in your photo library.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Swipe up, then tap Hidden (below Utilities).

3. Tap the photo you want to unhide.

4. Tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Unhide.

Recover or permanently delete deleted photos

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Swipe up, then tap Recently Deleted (below Utilities).

3. Tap Select, then choose the photos and videos you want to recover or delete.
4. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] at the bottom of the screen, then tap Recover or Delete.

Note: If you're looking for photos that don't appear here, they may be in Recovered. See [Find recovered items and save or delete them](#).

Lock and unlock the Recently Deleted and Hidden albums

The Recently Deleted and Hidden albums are locked by default. You unlock these albums using Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

To change the default setting from locked to unlocked, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Photos, then turn off Use Face ID, Use Touch ID, or Use Passcode.

Hide the Hidden collection from view

By default, the Hidden album is locked. You can also add an extra layer of privacy by removing the Hidden album from view.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
3. Turn off Hidden Album.

Related

[Feature a person, a place, or holidays less often in Photos on iPhone](#)
[Search for photos and videos on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Search for photos and videos](#)

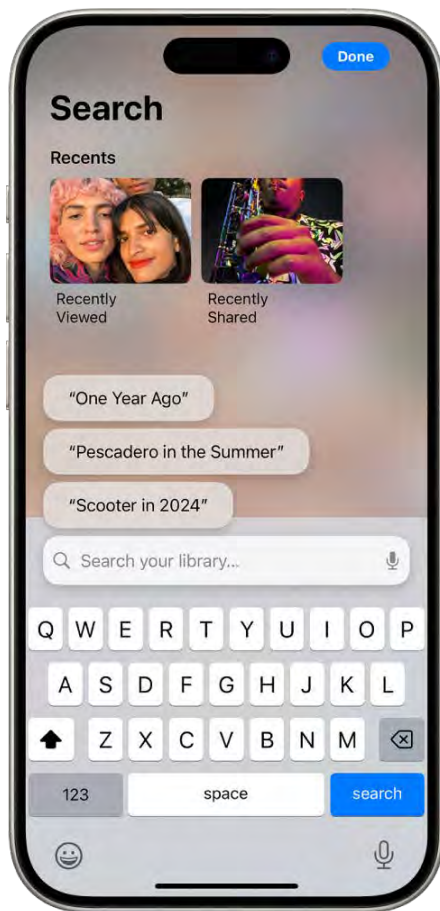
Search for photos and videos on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, use search to look through suggestions and quickly find what you're looking for.

When you tap Search in the Photos app, you see suggestions of moments, people, and places to help you find what you're looking for.

Tap the suggestions or type keywords into the search field—for example, a person's name, date, location, or object—to help you find a specific photo.



[Alt text: The Search screen in the Photos app. At the top of the screen are recents, followed by suggested searches, then the search field.]

Search for photos and videos

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search, then search by any of the following:
 - Date (month or year)
 - Place (city or state)
 - Business names (museums, for example)
 - Category (beach or sunset, for example)
 - Events (sports games or concerts, for example)
 - A person identified in People or People & Pets (see [Find and name people and pets](#))
 - Text (an email address or phone number, for example)
 - Caption (see [See photo and video information](#))

Tip: Looking for something more specific? Refine your search with multiple keywords—keep adding keywords until you find the right photo. Search also suggests keywords to add to your search.

Search by shared library participant

If you're a participant in an [iCloud Shared Photo Library](#), you can also search by the person who added the photo or video to the library.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search, then enter "Shared by."
3. Tap a suggested name.

Related

[Filter and sort the photo library on iPhone](#)

[Find recently saved photos on iPhone](#)

[Find your travel photos on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Get wallpaper suggestions](#)

Get wallpaper suggestions in Photos on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, get wallpaper suggestions that stylize photos of your favorite people and pets.

You can get wallpaper suggestions for your Lock Screen or Home Screen that stylize photos of your favorite people and pets.



[Alt text: Wallpaper Suggestions are open in the Photos app. Automatically generated combinations of photos, filter effects, and clock face fonts display in a list of suggestions.]

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down, then tap a suggested wallpaper (below Wallpaper Suggestions).

To customize the Lock Screen, including choosing colors, clock font, and more, see [Create a custom Lock Screen](#).

Related

[Make your iPhone your own](#)

[Change the wallpaper on iPhone](#)

Watch and personalize memories

NAV TITLE: [Watch memories](#)

Watch memories in Photos on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, watch automatically curated memory videos, or create your own.

The Memories feature in the Photos app creates a personalized collection of photos and videos that are set to music and play like a movie. Each memory features a significant person, pet, place, activity, theme, or event from your photo library. You can also create your own memories and share them with friends and family.



[Alt text: The Photos app is open to the Memories collection. The All tab is selected, with a list of memories below.]

Play a memory

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Scroll down to Memories, then tap the memory you want to watch. Tap Memories to see more.
3. Tap a memory to play it. As you watch, you can do any of the following:
 - *Pause:* Tap the screen, then tap  [Alt text: the Pause button] .
 - *Go backward or forward:* Swipe left or right on the screen. Or tap the screen, then slide the frames at the bottom of the screen left or right.
 - *Close a memory:* Tap the screen, then tap  [Alt text: the Close button] .

Tip: To set a memory to loop, tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Loop Movie.

Create a memory

You can create your own memory from an event, a specific day in your library, or an album.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap an existing collection or album, then tap Movie to watch the photos and videos as a memory.

To create a memory from scratch, [create a photo album](#), then follow the steps above to watch it as a memory.

Share a memory as a video

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down to Memories, then tap the memory you want to share.
3. While the memory plays, tap the screen, then tap  [Alt text: the More button] .
4. Tap Share Movie, then choose a sharing method, such as AirDrop, Messages, or Mail.

Tip: To send just the photos in the memory, rather than the movie, tap Photos at the bottom of the screen, tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Share Photos.

Share all the photos from a memory

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down to Memories, then tap the memory you want to share.
3. While the memory plays, tap the screen, then tap Photos.
4. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Share Photos.
5. Choose a sharing method, such as AirDrop, Messages, or Mail.

Add a memory to Favorites

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Scroll down to Memories, then tap  [Alt text: the Favorite button] in the top-right corner of the memory you want to add to Favorites.

To view your favorite memories, tap Memories, then tap Favorites.

Delete a memory

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down to Memories, then touch and hold the memory you want to delete.
3. Tap Delete Memory.

Related

[Personalize your memories in Photos on iPhone](#)

[Feature a person, a place, or holidays less often in Photos on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Personalize your memories](#)

Personalize your memories in Photos on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, edit your memory videos to make them even more personal.

You can edit your memory movies to make them even more personal. Try out Memory mixes, which let you apply different songs with a matching photographic look. You can also choose new songs, edit the title of a memory, change the length, and add, reorder, or remove photos. Apple Music subscribers can add songs from the millions of songs available in the Apple Music catalog.



[Alt text: A memory is playing in the middle of the screen. At the bottom of the screen, from left to right, are the Memory Mixes, Photos, and Movie buttons. At the top left of the screen are the Volume, More, and Close buttons. At the top right of the screen is the title of the memory and the name of the song and artist playing.]

Add a Memory mix

Memory mixes are curated combinations of different songs, pacing, and styles that change the look and feel of a memory.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down to Memories, then tap a memory to play it.
3. Tap the screen, then tap  [Alt text: the Memory Mixes button] .
4. Swipe left to view different Memory mixes.
5. Tap the screen to apply a Memory mix.

Change the Memory look

Use Memory looks to apply consistent color and style adjustments to all the photos in a memory.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down to Memories, then tap a memory to play it.
3. Tap the screen, then tap  [Alt text: the Memory Mixes button] .
4. Tap  [Alt text: the Filters button] , tap a Memory look, then tap Done.

Change the music

You can change a memory's music by choosing from memory soundtracks or suggested songs in Apple Music. Apple Music subscribers can also access their Apple Music library and view suggested songs based on musical preferences or the content of the memory.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down to Memories, then tap a memory to play it.
3. Tap the screen, then tap  [Alt text: the Memory mixes button] .
4. Tap  [Alt text: the Music button] , tap a song, then tap Done.

Apple Music subscribers can tap  [Alt text: the Search button] to search for songs in the Apple Music library.

Add or remove photos

You can choose the photos that appear in a memory—add or remove suggested featured photos, or choose photos and videos directly from your library.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down to Memories, then tap a memory to play it.
3. Tap the screen, tap Photos, then tap  [Alt text: the More button] .
4. Tap Edit Title and Photos, then tap Add Photos.
5. Do any of the following:
 - *Add a photo from your photo library:* Tap All, scroll through your library, then tap the photos you want to add.
 - *Remove photos:* Deselect a photo to remove it from the memory.
 - *Search for photos in your photo library:* Tap the search field, then type the name of a person, place, or date. Tap a search result, then tap the photos you want to add.
6. Tap Done.

To hide a photo instead of removing it, tap Photos, touch and hold the photo, then tap Hide.

Edit the title, subtitle, and key photo

You can edit the title or subtitle of a memory movie, or change the key photo that appears with the title of the memory.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down to Memories, then tap a memory to play it.
3. Tap the screen, tap Photos, then tap  [Alt text: the More button] .
4. Tap Edit Movie Title, then do any of the following:
 - *Edit the memory title or subtitle:* Enter a new title or subtitle in the text fields.
 - *Change the key photo:* Tap Edit Key Photo, then tap a photo.
5. Tap Done.

Reorder photos in a memory

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down to Memories, then tap a memory to play it.
3. While the memory plays, tap the screen, then tap  [Alt text: the More button] .
4. Tap Edit Movie Timeline, touch and hold a photo, then drag it to a new position in the grid.
5. Tap  [Alt text: the Back button] to return to the memory.

Change the length of a memory

Depending on the number of photos in a memory, you can change the length of a memory to be short, medium, or long. Your choice automatically adjusts the number of photos included.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down to Memories, then tap a memory to play it.
3. Tap the screen, then tap  [Alt text: the More button]
4. Tap Short, Medium, or Long.

If you customized the length of the movie by adding or removing photos yourself, Custom is selected as the length.

Related

[Watch memories in Photos on iPhone](#)

[Feature a person, a place, or holidays less often in Photos on iPhone](#)

[Subscribe to Apple Music on iPhone](#)

Make and play slideshows on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, create slideshows you can share and stream to other devices.

In the Photos app, you can create a slideshow to view a collection of photos and videos that you choose from your library. Slideshows are automatically formatted and set to music.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Swipe down to see the photo grid, then tap Select.
3. Tap each photo you want to include in the slideshow, then tap  [Alt text: the More button] .
4. Tap Play as Slideshow.

Note: Your slideshow is automatically saved as a memory. To view it later, scroll down to the Memories section of the Photos app.

To change the slideshow music, theme, and more, see [Personalize your memories](#).

Related

[Watch memories in Photos on iPhone](#)

[Create photo albums in Photos on iPhone](#)

[Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Feature someone less](#)

Feature a person, a place, or holidays less often in Photos on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, turn off memories and featured photos or choose to feature certain people less often.

You can set the Photos app to show certain people, places, days, and holidays less frequently or not at all in your memories, in featured photos, and in the Photos widget. You can also turn off memories and featured photos in the Photos app and widget on your iPhone Home Screen.

Show a person less frequently or not at all

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo of the person you want to show less often.

3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Feature This Person Less.
4. Choose Feature This Person Less, then choose an option.
5. Tap Confirm.

Turn off holiday memories

You can turn off all memories that feature holiday events in your home country or region.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Photos.
2. Turn off Show Holiday Events.

Turn off Memories and Featured Photos

You can turn off Memories and Featured Photos in the Photos app and the Photos widget.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Photos.
2. Turn off Show Featured Content.

Related

[Personalize your memories in Photos on iPhone](#)

[Delete or hide photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[Customize the Photos app on iPhone](#)

Use photo albums

NAV TITLE: [Create photo albums](#)

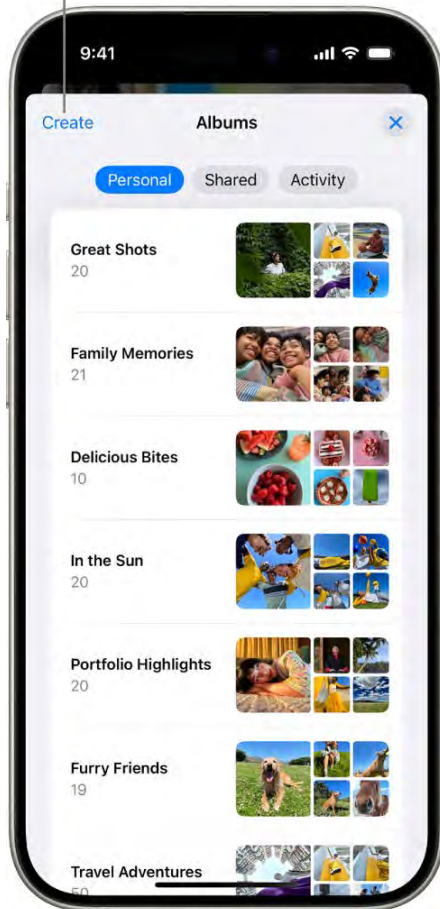
Create photo albums in Photos on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, use albums to organize your photos and videos.

Create albums to organize your photos and videos.

Tap to create a new album or folder.



[Alt text: Albums are open in the Photos app. The Personal tab is selected; below that is a list of albums.]

If you use iCloud Photos, albums are stored in iCloud. They're up to date and accessible on devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account. See [Back up and sync your photos with iCloud](#).

Create a new album

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, then tap Create.
3. Tap New Album, then name the album, add photos, and choose a key photo to represent the album.
4. Tap Done.

To create an album that you can collaborate on with other people, see [Create shared albums](#).

Add a photo or video to an album

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the photo or video you want to add, then tap  [Alt text: the More button] .

If you want to add multiple photos and videos at once, tap Select, tap the photos and video thumbnails you want to add, then tap  [Alt text: the More button] .

3. Tap Add to Album, then do one of the following:
 - *Add to an existing album:* Tap an existing album below My Albums.
 - *Start a new album:* Tap  [Alt text: the Add button] , then give the album a name.

Related

[Edit and organize albums on iPhone](#)

[Filter and sort photos and videos in albums on iPhone](#)

[Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Edit and organize albums](#)

Edit and organize albums on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, edit, delete, and organize the albums you create.

You can update, rename, rearrange, and delete albums in the Photos app. You can also create folders to contain multiple albums. For example, you could create a folder named “Vacations,” and then create multiple albums within the folder of all your vacations.

Add photos to an album

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, then tap the album.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Add button] after the last photo in the album’s photo grid.
4. Select the photos or videos you want to add to the album, then tap Add.

Tip: Use the search field at the top of the screen to find photos from a specific time or place.

Remove photos from an album

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Albums, tap the album, then tap the photo or video you want to remove to view it in full screen.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Delete button] , then choose one of the following:
 - *Remove from Album:* The photo is removed from that album, but remains in other albums and your library.
 - *Delete from Library:* The photo is removed from all albums and your library and moved to the Recently Deleted album.

To remove multiple photos or videos from an album, tap Select, tap the photo and video thumbnails you want to remove, then tap  [Alt text: the Delete button] .

Rename an album

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, then tap the album you want to rename.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Edit Title and Photos.
4. Enter the new name in the text field, then tap Done.

Delete albums

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, then touch and hold the album you want to delete.
3. Tap Delete Album.

Organize albums in folders

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, tap Create, then choose New Folder.
3. Name the folder, then tap  [Alt text: the Add button] .

To remove an album from a folder, tap the folder to open it, touch and hold an album, then tap Move Album out of “[name]”.

Related

[Create photo albums in Photos on iPhone](#)

[Filter and sort photos and videos in albums on iPhone](#)

[Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone](#)

Filter and sort photos and videos in albums on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, filter and sort photos and videos in the albums you create.

You can filter and sort photos and videos in the albums you create in the Photos app. For example, you can filter an album to show only photos, only videos, or photos and videos you marked as favorites. You can also sort photos and videos in an album by newest to oldest, oldest to newest, or in a custom order.

Filter photos and videos in an album

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, then open an album.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Sort button], tap Filter, then choose an option.
4. Tap Done.

To remove a filter from an album, tap the icon that replaced  [Alt text: the Sort button] in the bottom-left corner of the screen, tap Filter, then tap All Items.

Sort photos and videos by oldest, newest, or in a custom order

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Albums, then open an album.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Sort button], then choose an option.

To quickly customize the order, you can also touch and hold a photo or video thumbnail, then drag it where you want it to appear.

Related

[Create photo albums in Photos on iPhone](#)

[Edit and organize albums on iPhone](#)

[Filter and sort the photo library on iPhone](#)

Share photos and videos

NAV TITLE: [Share photos and videos](#)

Share photos and videos on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: The Photos app on iPhone lets you share your photos and videos in various ways.

You can share photos and videos in Mail or Messages, or other apps you install. You can also use [AirDrop](#) to instantly share photos with anyone nearby on an iPhone, iPad, Mac, or Apple Vision Pro.

To learn about transferring photos and video to an external storage device, see [Import and export photos and videos](#).

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

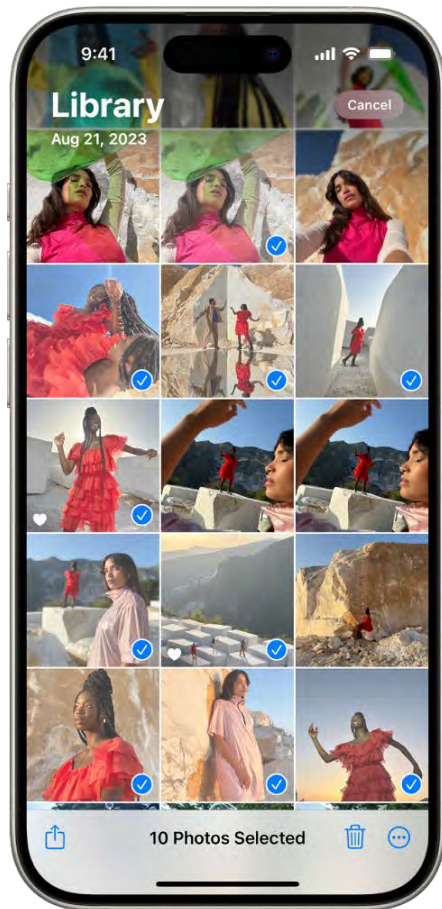
Share photos and videos

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Share a single photo or video:* Open the photo or video, tap  [Alt text: the Share button] , then choose a share option such as Mail, Messages, or AirDrop.



[Alt text: A selected photo is displayed in the top half of the iPhone screen, with share options beneath it: AirDrop, Messages, Mail, and Notes. Below these sharing options are other actions that can be made to the photo, including Copy Photo, Add to Shared Album, Add to Album, and AirPlay.]

- *Share multiple photos or videos:* While viewing a screen with multiple thumbnails, tap Select, then tap the thumbnail of the photos and videos you want to share. Tap  [Alt text: the Share button], then choose a share option such as Mail, Messages, or AirDrop.



[Alt text: The iPhone screen is filled with a grid of photos, some of which are selected. At the bottom of the screen are the Share, Delete, and More buttons.]

- **Share all the photos in a collection:** While viewing a collection—like a collection from Recent Days, Memories, or Trips—tap  [Alt text: the More button], tap Share Photos, then choose a share option such as Mail, Messages, or AirDrop.

- COMMENT - Placeholder for screenshot

You can also create a shared album so that you can collaborate on the album with just the people you choose. See [Create shared albums](#).

Note: The size limit of attachments is determined by your service provider. For devices or services that don't support Live Photos, a Live Photo is shared as a still photo.

Adjust the information you share about a photo

Before you share a photo or video, you can adjust the format, file type, and information that gets shared with it.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Open the photo or video, tap  [Alt text: the Share button] , tap Options, then do any of the following:
 - *Turn off location data:* Turn off Location.
 - *Adjust the file format:* Tap Automatic for the best file format for the destination, tap Current to prevent a file format conversion, or tap Most Compatible and files may convert to JPEG or MOV.
 - *Send as iCloud link:* Turn on iCloud Link to share a URL to view or download the photos or videos. iCloud links are available for 30 days.
 - *Send all photo data:* Turn on All Photos Data to share the original file with edit history and metadata; the recipient can view and modify the current version (available with AirDrop and iCloud links only).
3. Tap Done.

Save or share a photo or video you receive

You can save photos shared with you from other apps, like Messages or Mail.

Touch and hold the photo or video, then tap  [Alt text: the Save button] .

To view your saved photos and videos, see [Find recently saved photos](#).

See photos and videos shared with you in Messages

You can see photos shared with you in texting conversations in Messages—even if you haven’t saved them.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
3. Tap Shared with You.

To save a photo, tap it, then tap Save Shared Photo.

Related

[Use AirDrop on iPhone to send items to nearby Apple devices](#)

[Import and export photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Share long videos](#)

Share long videos on your iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, use AirDrop, iCloud, or Mail Drop to send long videos

recorded on your iPhone.

Some long video files are too large to send in a standard text message. You can use AirDrop, iCloud, or Mail Drop to send long videos that you record with your iPhone camera.

Send a video using AirDrop

The simplest way to send a large video to a nearby iPhone, iPad, Mac, or Apple Vision Pro is with AirDrop  [ALT N/A] . AirDrop sends information using Wi-Fi and Bluetooth®, so before sending, make sure both you and the recipient have these controls turned on in [Control Center](#).

1. If the person you're sending the video to isn't in your contacts, have them do one of the following:
 - *On iPhone or iPad:* Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > General > AirDrop, then tap Everyone for 10 Minutes.
 - *On a Mac:* Choose Apple menu  [ALT N/A] > System Settings, then click General in the sidebar. Click AirDrop & Handoff, then click the pop-up menu next to AirDrop and choose Everyone.
2. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
3. Tap the video you want to send, then tap  [Alt text: the Share button] .

If you want to send the video in its original format, including metadata, location, and any associated edit history or captions, tap Options, then turn on All Photos Data.

4. Tap AirDrop, then tap the contact or device you want to share with.

After you share, the recipient receives an alert to accept or decline the AirDrop transfer.

Send a video using an iCloud link

An iCloud link is a URL that you can use to send a large video with Messages or Mail.

To send an iCloud link, make sure you have [iCloud Photos turned on](#). Then follow these steps:

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the video you want to send, then tap  [Alt text: the Share button] .
3. Tap Options, then tap Copy iCloud Link.
4. Go to Messages  [ALT N/A] , Mail  [ALT N/A] , or another communication app, then enter the recipient of the iCloud link. Paste the iCloud link into a message, and send it.

Recipients have 30 days to download a video sent with an iCloud link.

Send a video using Mail Drop

With Mail Drop, you can send a large video as an attachment in Mail.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the video you want to send, tap  [Alt text: the Share button], then tap Mail.
3. Tap the To field, then enter the name or email of the recipient.
If you want to add a subject or message, tap the Subject field or email body.
4. Tap  [Alt text: the Send button] to send.

Recipients have 30 days to download Mail Drop attachments.

Related

[Apple Support article: How to use AirDrop on your iPhone or iPad](#)

[Apple Support article: Mail Drop limits](#)

[Share photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[Import and export photos and videos on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Create shared albums](#)

Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, create a shared album and invite people to join it so you can all add photos, videos, comments, and likes.

With the Shared Albums feature, you can create albums to share photos and videos with just the subscribers you choose—and they can add their own photos, videos, and comments for everyone to see. If you set up a shared album, you can also rename or delete it.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

Before you begin

1. Make sure you're signed in to your [Apple Account](#) on your iPhone and any other devices you want to use with Shared Albums.
2. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > iCloud > Photos, then turn on Shared Albums.

Create a shared album

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down, then tap Albums.
3. Choose Shared, then tap Create.

4. Enter a name for the album.
5. To invite people, tap Invite. Enter the name of a contact you want to add, or type the email address or phone number associated with the recipient's Apple Account. See [Invite or remove people](#).

Join a shared album

When you're invited to join a shared album, a notification appears on your iPhone screen.

Tap the notification, then tap Accept on the album in the Photos app.

If you don't join the shared album by tapping the notification, you can also do the following:

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap For You.
3. Tap Accept on the new album, below Shared Album Activity.

Note: The person who created the album receives a notification when someone accepts the invitation to join the shared album.

Rename a shared album

The creator of a shared album can change its name.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Shared Albums, then tap the album.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Shared Album Details.
4. Enter a new name, then tap Done.

Delete or remove yourself from a shared album

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Shared Albums, then tap the album.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] .
4. Tap Delete Shared Album if you created the album, or tap Unsubscribe if you're a subscriber.

Photos that you saved or downloaded from a shared album to your photos library stay in your library even if the shared album is deleted, or the person who created the album stops sharing it. See [Save photos and videos from a shared album to your photo library](#).

Related

[Add and delete photos and videos in a shared album in Photos on iPhone](#)

[Add and remove people in a shared album in Photos on iPhone](#)

[Share photos and videos on iPhone](#)

Add and remove people in a shared album in Photos on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, invite more subscribers to join a shared album, remove subscribers from a shared album, and turn posting and notifications off and on.

If you're the creator of a shared album, you can invite more subscribers to join the album. You can also remove subscribers from the album, manage album notifications, and turn posting for subscribers off and on. If you have friends and family who don't use iCloud, you can share the album with them by sending an iCloud URL.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

Invite or remove people

The creator of a shared album can invite new subscribers to join a shared album.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Shared Albums, then tap the album.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Shared Album Details.
4. Do any of the following:
 - *Invite someone:* Tap Invite, then enter the name of the contact you want to add, or type an email address or phone number.
 - *Remove someone:* Tap the name, then tap Remove Subscriber.

P9

Share an album with people who don't use iCloud

The creator of a shared album can create a unique iCloud URL to share the album with people who don't use iCloud.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Shared Albums, then tap the album.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Shared Album Details.
4. Turn on Public Website.
5. Tap Share Link, then choose how you want to share—Mail or Messages, for example.
6. Enter the names, phone numbers, or email addresses of the people you want to share the link with, then send the link.

When Public Website is turned on, anyone with the URL can access the album.

Manage posts and notifications

The creator of a shared album can turn subscriber posting and album activity notifications off and on.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Shared Album, then tap the album.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button], tap Shared Album Details, then adjust any of the following:
 - *Only allow yourself to post photos and videos:* Turn off Participants Can Add Photos; tap again to turn participant posting back on.
 - *Turn off notifications:* Turn off Notifications to stop notifications when subscribers like, comment, or add photos and videos to the album; tap again to turn album notifications back on.
4. Tap Done.

When participants post or comment in a shared album you're a part of, notifications about the activity appear just below the photo grid. To stop getting activity updates, tap your account in the top-right corner, then turn off Shared Albums Activity.

Related

[Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone](#)

[Add and delete photos and videos in a shared album in Photos on iPhone](#)

[Share photos and videos on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Add and delete photos and videos in a shared album](#)

Add and delete photos and videos in a shared album in Photos on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, add, delete, and save photos and videos in a shared album.

You can add and delete photos and videos that you added to a shared album. You can also save photos and videos from a shared album to your photo library.

Add photos and videos to a shared album

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Shared Albums, then tap the album.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Add Photos.
4. Select photos and videos, then tap Add.

When you add new photos, the people you share the album with are automatically notified.

Delete photos, videos, and comments from a shared album

Creators of a shared album can delete any photos, videos, or comments in the album. Subscribers can delete anything that they personally added. Anything that gets deleted is automatically deleted from the shared album on all your devices and the devices of all subscribers.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Shared Albums, then tap the album.
3. Touch and hold the photo or video, then tap Delete from Shared Album.

To delete a comment, touch and hold it, then tap Delete.

Save photos and videos from a shared album to your photo library

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Shared Albums, tap the album, then tap a photo or video.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Share button] , swipe up, then tap Save Image or Save Video.

Related

[Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone](#)

[Add and remove people in a shared album in Photos on iPhone](#)

[Share photos and videos on iPhone](#)

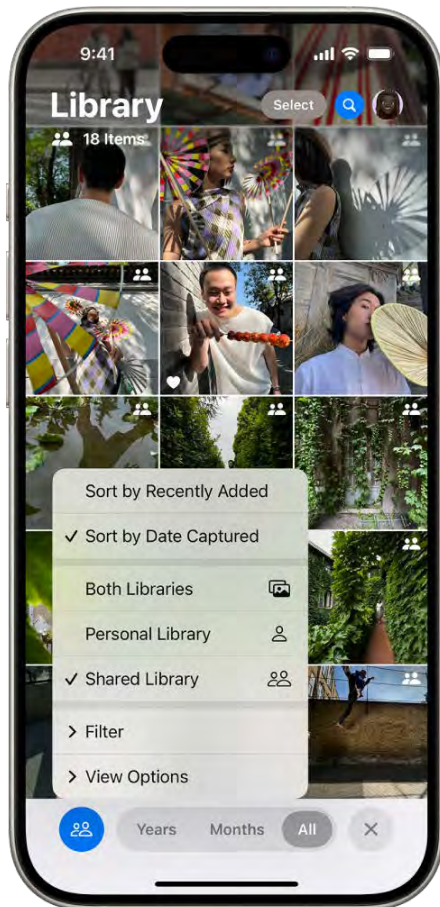
NAV TITLE: [Set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library](#)

Set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library in Photos on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library to share and collaborate on photo collections with up to five other people.

With the iCloud Shared Photo Library feature, you can set up or join a shared library to share photos and videos with up to five friends or family members. You and those close to you can collaborate on the photo collection and enjoy more complete memories, all in one place. You can belong to one shared library at a time.



[Alt text: An iCloud Shared Photo Library in the Photos app. The Shared Library button in the bottom-left corner is selected, and Shared Library is selected. All the photos displayed in the library have a shared library icon in the top-right corner.]

When you join a shared library, the photos and videos that you contribute move from your personal library to the shared library, and all members of the library can view, edit, and delete them. Shared library photos and videos are integrated seamlessly in the Photos app alongside your personal content, but you can also use a filter to quickly [switch between your personal and shared libraries](#).

Note: iOS 16.1, iPadOS 16.1, macOS 13, or later are the minimum system requirements to use iCloud Shared Photo Library. Photos and videos added to a shared library won't be available on devices with earlier versions of the software.

Before you begin

Before you set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library, make sure you have iCloud Photos turned on.

Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > iCloud > Photos, then make sure Sync this iPhone is on.

Note: You don't need [Family Sharing](#) turned on to set up a shared library.

Set up an iCloud Shared Photo Library

The person who sets up a shared library is the organizer.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
3. Tap Shared Library, then follow the onscreen instructions to add participants and move photos and videos into the shared library.

Note: Photos and videos you add to the shared library don't appear in your personal library; see [Switch between viewing your iCloud Shared Photo Library and personal library](#).

You can preview the photos and videos you add to the shared library and make changes before you invite participants using Messages or a web link.

Join an iCloud Shared Photo Library

To join an iCloud Shared Photo Library, tap the invitation sent from the organizer, tap Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions. During setup, you can add photos and videos to the shared library the same way as the organizer (see [Set up an iCloud Shared Photo Library](#)).

After you join a shared library, you can add photos and videos to it in several ways, and access the same content within it as the organizer and other participants. See [Add content to an iCloud Shared Photo Library](#).

Add participants to an iCloud Shared Photo Library

The person who sets up an iCloud Shared Photo Library (the organizer) can add new participants to the shared library.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
3. Tap Manage to the right of Shared Library, then tap Add Participants.

Note: A shared library can include up to six participants including the organizer; you can belong to one shared library at a time.

Delete or leave an iCloud Shared Photo Library

If you set up an iCloud Shared Photo Library, you're the organizer; you can delete it. If you aren't the organizer, you can leave the shared library.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
3. Tap Manage to the right of Shared Library, then tap one of the following:

- Delete Shared Library.

When a shared library is deleted, participants who have been members of the shared library for more than 7 days can copy everything from the shared library into their own libraries. Participants who have been members for less than 7 days can copy only the content they contributed.

- Leave Shared Library.

When you leave a shared library, you can copy everything from the shared library into your own library, or just the content you contributed.

All content added to a shared library counts toward the iCloud storage space of the library organizer. See [Add storage space to your iCloud Shared Photo Library](#).

Related

[Add content to iCloud Shared Photo Library in Photos on iPhone](#)

[Use iCloud Shared Photo Library on iPhone](#)

[Apple Support article: How to use iCloud Shared Photo Library](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use iCloud Shared Photo Library](#)

Use iCloud Shared Photo Library on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, switch between viewing your iCloud Shared Photo Library and your personal library, and move content from the shared library to your personal library.

After you [set up or join](#) an iCloud Shared Photo Library, you can share photos and videos with friends and family in the Photos app. You and up to five other participants can add photos and videos to the library, and any edits, comments, or other adjustments made to them are seen by everyone in real time. Content in a shared library is also added to everyone's memories, featured photos, and the Photos widget, so everyone can experience more complete memories.

Photos and videos added to a shared library are separate from your personal library. You can easily switch between viewing the shared library, your personal library, or both in the Photos app.

Switch between viewing your iCloud Shared Photo Library and personal library

After you [set up iCloud Shared Photo Library](#), you can switch between viewing your personal library, the shared library, or both libraries in the Photos app.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap your account in the top-right corner, then do any of the following:
 - *View your Photos content and iCloud Shared Photo Library content:* Tap  [ALT N/A] Both Libraries.
 - *View only your personal Photos content:* Tap  [ALT N/A] Personal Library.
 - *View only iCloud Shared Photo Library content:* Tap  [ALT N/A] Shared Library.

Content that's part of the shared library has a badge  [Alt text: the Shared Library button] in the top-right corner of the thumbnail when you select the All Photos option at the top of the screen.

Make edits and changes to content in an iCloud Shared Photo Library

When you make the following changes to photos and videos in an iCloud Shared Photo Library, all participants see the changes:

- Edits; see [Edit photos and videos](#).
- Favorites, captions, keywords, or date and time adjustments; see [See photo and video information](#).
- Deleted content; see [Delete or hide photos and videos](#).

Note: You receive notifications if content you added to the shared library is deleted. To turn off notifications, Tap your account in the top-right corner of the Photos app, then tap Shared Library. Turn off Deletion Notifications. If content you added is deleted, you can move it from the Recently Deleted album back to your personal library within 30 days.

Move shared content from an iCloud Shared Photo Library to your personal library

Photos that are stored in your shared library have the Shared Library icon  [ALT N/A] in their top-right corner. You can move photos and videos that you contributed to the shared library back to your personal library.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo or video, then tap the Shared Library icon  [ALT N/A] at the top of the screen.
3. Tap Move to Personal Library.

Add storage space to your iCloud Shared Photo Library

The content in an iCloud Shared Photo Library is available to all participants, but the iCloud storage used to store the content counts against the library organizer's storage space.

If the shared library content exceeds the organizer's available storage space, the organizer can upgrade to iCloud+ or add additional storage to their existing iCloud+ subscription. See [Subscribe to iCloud+](#).

Related

[Set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library in Photos on iPhone](#)

[Add content to an iCloud Shared Photo Library in Photos on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Add content to an iCloud Shared Photo Library](#)

Add content to an iCloud Shared Photo Library in Photos on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, add photos and videos to your iCloud Shared Photo Library.

After you [set up or join](#) an iCloud Shared Photo Library in the Photos app, you can continue to add photos and videos in several ways:

- Manually move photos from your personal library
- Save photos and videos you take directly to the shared library from Camera  [ALT N/A]
- Share photos you take when other members of the shared library are nearby
- Share photos and videos you take at home

Note: iOS 16.1, iPadOS 16.1, macOS 13, or later are the minimum system requirements to use iCloud Shared Photo Library. Photos and videos added to a shared library won't be available on devices with earlier versions of the software.

Manually add photos and videos to an iCloud Shared Photo Library

You can add individual photos and videos from your personal library to the iCloud Shared Photo Library.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the photo or video you want to add to view it in full screen on your iPhone. Or, to add multiple photos and videos at the same time, tap Select, then tap the thumbnails you want to add.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Move to Shared Library.



[Alt text: A photo is open on the Photos app. At the top of the screen is the option Move to Shared Library.]

After content is moved to the shared library, it's no longer in your personal library and it's visible to all of the shared library participants. To move content from the shared library back to your personal library, follow the steps above, but tap Move to Personal Library instead of Move to Shared Library.

Add photos and videos to an iCloud Shared Photo Library directly from Camera

After you [set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library](#), when you open Camera  [ALT N/A], a Shared Library button appears at the top of the screen to let you switch between saving the photos and videos you take directly to your personal library or to the shared library. By default, shared library is off and Camera saves to your personal library. To switch, tap  [Alt text: the Personal Library button] to save to the shared library; tap  [Alt text: the Shared Library button] to switch back to your personal library.

To turn the feature on or off after you complete the setup process, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Photos > Shared Library > Sharing from Camera, then turn Sharing from Camera on or off (green is on).

Add photos and videos to an iCloud Shared Photo Library when participants are

nearby

When you [set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library](#), you can choose an option so that photos you take when you're near other participants of the shared library are automatically added to the shared library.

To allow iPhone to detect when participants of your shared library are nearby, participants need to be [signed in to their Apple Account](#) on their device, and have Bluetooth® turned on in Settings  [ALT N/A] > Bluetooth.

To turn the feature on or off after you complete the setup process, do the following:

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
3. Tap Shared Library, then tap Sharing from Camera.
4. Tap Share Automatically.

Automatically add photos and videos taken at home to an iCloud Shared Photo Library

When you [set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library](#), you can choose an option to automatically add photos and videos you take at home to the shared library.

To turn the feature on or off after you complete the setup process, do the following:

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
3. Tap Shared Library, then tap Sharing from Camera.
4. Turn Share When At Home on or off.

Turn iCloud Shared Photo Library sharing suggestions on or off

Sharing suggestions recommends photos you might want to add to your iCloud Shared Photo Library, such as photos you took when participants of the shared library were nearby, or photos of people you indicated interest in during the setup process. iPhone sends a notification to review sharing suggestions. To turn suggestions on or off, follow these steps:

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
3. Tap Shared Library, then turn Shared Library Suggestions on or off.

If you want to get sharing suggestions for additional people, tap Add People, tap a person, then tap Add. The person doesn't have to be a member of the shared library.

For more information about accessing content in a shared library, see the Apple Support article [If you are missing photos after joining an iCloud Shared Photo Library](#).

Related

[Share photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone](#)

Edit photos and videos

NAV TITLE: [Edit photos and videos](#)

Edit photos and videos on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, adjust a photo's light and color, add a filter effect, copy and paste edits, add stickers, and more.

After you take a photo or video, use the tools in the Photos app to edit it on your iPhone. You can adjust the light and color, add a filter, and more.

When you use [iCloud Photos](#), any edits you make to your photos and videos are saved across all your devices.

Tip: To choose the background color of Edit mode—for example, set it to always be dark—see [Set the background color of Edit mode](#).

Adjust light and color

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo or video to open it, then tap  [Alt text: the Edit button] .
3. Swipe left under the photo to view the lighting adjustments you can make—for example, Exposure, Brilliance, Highlights, and Shadows.
4. Tap the lighting setting you want to adjust, then drag the slider to make precise adjustments.

The level of adjustment you make for each lighting effect is indicated by the outline around the button, so you can see at a glance which lighting effects have been increased or decreased. Tap the lighting effect button to toggle between the edited photo or video and the original so you can see the difference your edits made.



[Alt text: The Edit screen with a photo in the center. At the bottom of the screen, from left to right, are the Adjust, Filters, and Crop buttons. The Adjust button is selected and there is a slider to adjust the Brilliance of the photo. The Cancel button is in the top-left corner of the screen and the Done button is in the top-right corner of the screen.]

5. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel, then tap Discard Changes.

Tip: Tap  [Alt text: the Enhance button] to automatically enhance light and color in a photo or video.

Apply filter effects

On iPhone 15 or earlier, you can apply filter effects to change the tint of a photo.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo or video, then tap  [Alt text: the Edit button] .
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Filters button] to apply filter effects such as Vivid or Dramatic.

To remove a filter that was applied when you took the photo, tap Original.



[Alt text: The Edit screen with a photo in the center. At the bottom of the screen, from left to right, are the Adjust, Filters, and Crop buttons. The Filters button is selected and there is a slider to adjust the intensity of the filter.]

4. Tap a filter, then drag the slider to adjust the effect.

To compare the edited photo to the original, tap the photo.

5. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel, then tap Discard Changes.

Copy and paste edits to multiple photos

You can copy the edits you made to one photo (or video) and paste them onto another photo, or a batch of photos, all at the same time.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open the photo or video that contains the edits you want to copy.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Copy Edits.

4. Review the edits that will be copied, and turn off any edits you don't want to copy. Then tap Copy.
5. Tap  [Alt text: the Close button] to return to your library.
6. Tap Select, then tap the thumbnails of the photos you want to paste the edits onto, or open a single photo or video.
7. Tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Paste Edits.

Note: Photos automatically adjusts the white balance and exposure of the edited photos to create a better match and make the photos look even more similar.

Add stickers, text, and more to a photo

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo to view to open it.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Edit button], then tap  [Alt text: the Mark Up button].
4. Tap  [Alt text: the Add Annotations button] to add stickers, captions, text, shapes, or even your signature.
5. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel.

Related

[Crop, rotate, flip, or straighten photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[Undo and revert photo edits in Photos on iPhone](#)

[Use Markup to add text, shapes, signatures, and more to documents on iPhone](#)

[Apple Support article: How to edit with third-party apps and extensions in Photos](#)

NAV TITLE: [Crop, rotate, flip, or straighten photos and videos](#)

Crop, rotate, flip, or straighten photos and videos on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, crop, rotate, flip, straighten, or adjust the size of a photo.

After you take a photo or video, use the tools in the Photos app to crop, rotate, flip, straighten, or adjust the size of a photo on iPhone.

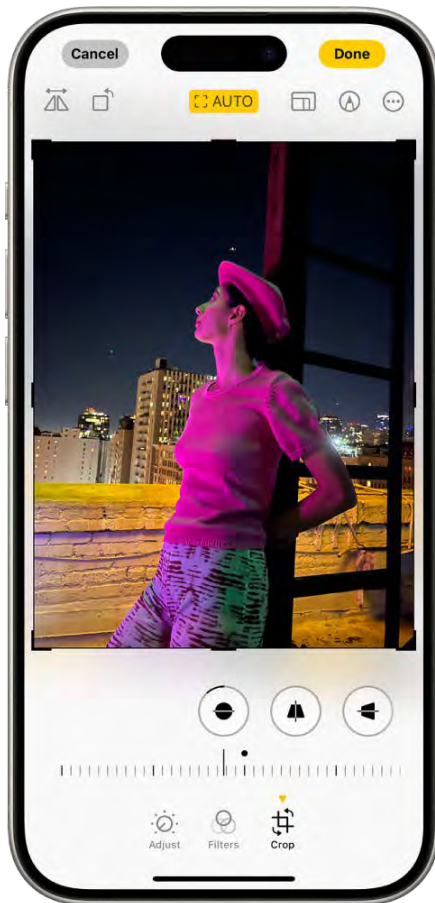
When you use [iCloud Photos](#), any edits you make to your photos and videos are saved across all your devices.

Crop, rotate, or flip a photo or video

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo or video to open it, then tap  [ALT text: the Edit button] .
3. Tap  [ALT text: the Crop button] , then do any of the following:
 - *Crop manually:* Drag the rectangle corners to enclose the area you want to keep in the image, or pinch open or closed.

Note: When you drag a corner, the crop tool keeps the original aspect ratio of the photo. To change the aspect ratio, tap the lock at the top-right corner of the photo to unlock the aspect ratio.

 - *Crop to a standard preset ratio:* Tap  [ALT text: the Aspect Ratio Freeform button] , then choose an option such as Square, Wallpaper, 16:9, or 5:4.
 - *Rotate:* Tap  [ALT text: the Rotate button] to rotate the image 90 degrees.
 - *Flip:* Tap  [ALT text: the Flip button] to flip the image horizontally.



[ALT text: The Edit screen with a photo in the center. At the bottom of the screen, from left to right, are the Adjust, Filters, and Crop buttons. The Crop button is selected and there is a slider to adjust the geometry

enhancements.]

4. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel, then tap Discard Changes.

Tip: To quickly crop a photo while you're viewing it, pinch the photo to zoom in. When the photo appears as you want it cropped, tap Crop in the top-right corner of the screen. Make any further adjustments with the crop tools, then tap Done.

Straighten a photo or video and adjust its perspective

You can turn a photo or video, or tilt the perspective vertically or horizontally.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo or video to open it, then tap  [Alt text: the Edit button] .
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Crop button] .
4. Swipe left under the photo to view editing options.
5. Tap the effect you want to edit, then drag the slider to make precise adjustments.

The level of adjustment you make is displayed by the slider. Tap the button to switch between the edited photo or video and the original.

6. Tap Done to save your edits.

Tip: To undo edits after you save, open the photo or video, tap  [Alt text: the Edit button] , then tap Revert.

Related

[Edit photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[Undo and revert photo edits in Photos on iPhone](#)

[Use Markup to add text, shapes, stickers, and more to documents on iPhone](#)

[Apple Support article: How to edit with third-party apps and extensions in Photos](#)

NAV TITLE: [Undo and revert photo edits](#)

Undo and revert photo edits in Photos on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: While you edit a photo or video in Photos on iPhone, you can undo and redo changes, or revert back to the original.

While you edit a photo or video, you can undo and redo changes. After saving, if you don't like how your changes look, you can revert back to the original.

When you use [iCloud Photos](#), any edits you make to your photos and videos are saved across all your devices.

Undo and redo as you edit

As you edit a photo or video, tap  [Alt text: the Undo button] and  [Alt text: the Redo button] at the top of the screen to undo and redo multiple edit steps.

Tip: You can tap the photo or video to compare the edited version to the original.

Revert an edited photo or video

To undo edits after you save, you can revert to the original.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open the edited photo or video, then tap  [Alt text: the More button] .
3. Tap Revert to Original.

Related

[Edit photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[Crop, rotate, flip, or straighten photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[Edit portraits on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Trim video length, adjust speed, and edit audio](#)

Trim video length, adjust speed, and edit audio on iPhone

Metadata

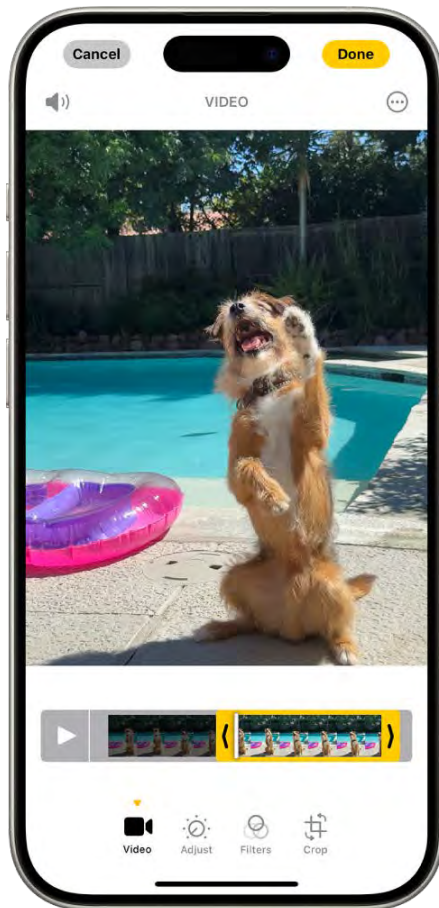
Summary: In Photos, trim the length of videos you take on iPhone, change the Spatial Audio mix, and adjust the speed and slow motion effects.

In the Photos app, you can trim a video you recorded on your iPhone to change where it starts and stops. You can also adjust the playback speed, and change the portion of a video that appears in slow motion when you record in Slo-mo mode.

Trim a video

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a video, then tap  [Alt text: the Edit button] .
3. Drag either end of the frame viewer below the video to change the start and stop times, then tap Done.

4. Tap Save Video to save only the trimmed video, or Save Video as New Clip to save both versions of the video.



[Alt text: The Edit screen in the Photos app with a video playing in the center. The video's frame viewer across the bottom of the video has a yellow outline around the selected frames to include in the trimmed video. On the bottom of the screen are the Video, Adjust, Filters, and Crop buttons; the Video button is selected.]

To undo edits after you save, open the video, tap  [Alt text: the Edit button], then tap Revert.

Note: A video saved as a new clip can't be reverted to the original.

Play your video at a slower speed

You can slow down videos that were captured at a high frame rate for a dramatic effect.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a video, tap  [Alt text: the Edit button], tap Adjust, then tap  [Alt text: the Playback Speed button].
3. Choose a playback speed:

- *Normal speed:* Play your video at normal speed. This is always available.
- *Half-speed:* Slow your video down to half speed. Available if you captured the video at a frame rate of at least 60 frames per second.
- *Quarter speed:* Slow your video down to quarter speed. Available if you captured the video at a frame rate of at least 120 frames per second.
- *One-fifth speed:* Slow your video down to one-fifth speed, or 24 frames per second. Available if you captured the video at a frame rate of at least 120 frames per second.

Note: The playback options available depend on the format of the video you captured. The larger format you capture, the more options available.

Change the slow-motion section of a video shot in Slo-mo mode

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a video shot in Slo-mo mode, then tap  [Alt text: the Edit button] .
3. Drag the black vertical bars beneath the frame viewer to set where the video is played in slow motion.

Related

[Edit photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[Edit Cinematic mode videos on your iPhone](#)

[Undo and revert photo edits in Photos on iPhone](#)

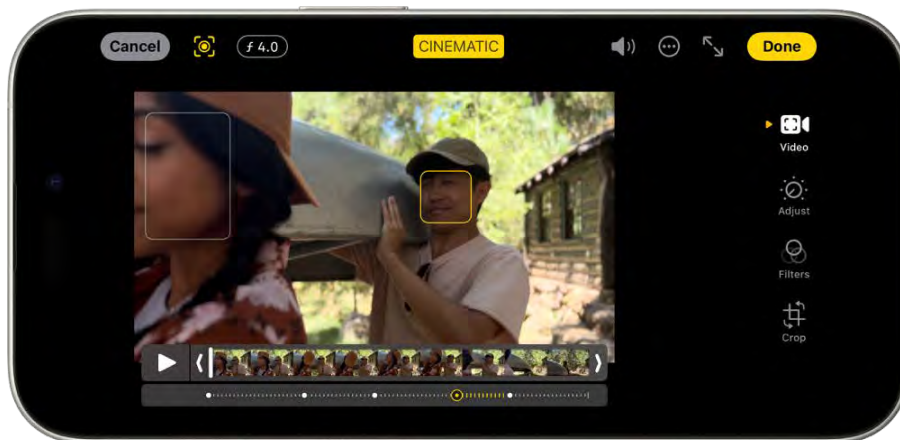
NAV TITLE: [Edit Cinematic mode videos](#)

Edit Cinematic mode videos on your iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, turn the Cinematic mode effect on and off, edit the focus point and depth of field effect, and export Cinematic mode videos to your Mac.

On iPhone 13 and later, Cinematic mode in Camera applies a depth-of-field effect that keeps the subject of your video sharp while creating a beautifully blurred foreground and background. After capturing the video, you can adjust or remove the cinematic mode effects in the Photos app.



[Alt text: The Edit screen of a Cinematic mode video. At the top left of the screen is the Cancel button, the Cinematic Manual button, and the Depth Adjustment button. At the top center of the screen, the Cinematic button is selected. At the top right of the screen is the Volume button, the More button, the Enter Full Screen button, and the Done button. The video is in the center of the screen and there is a frame around the focus subject. Below the video is the frame viewer that displays the point in the video where the subject focus changes. The editing buttons are on the right side of the screen, from the top to bottom: Video, Adjust Color, Filters, and Crop.]

Turn off the Cinematic effect

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a video you recorded in Cinematic mode, then tap  [Alt text: the Edit button] .
3. Tap Cinematic at the top of the screen, then tap Done.

To turn Cinematic mode back on, repeat these steps.

Change the focus subject in a Cinematic mode video

Camera automatically identifies where to focus while you record in Cinematic mode and can automatically change focus if a new subject is identified. You can also change the focus subject manually.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a video you recorded in Cinematic mode, then tap  [Alt text: the Edit button] .

White dots under the frame viewer indicate where Camera automatically changed the focus while recording. Yellow dots indicate where the focus was manually changed.

3. Play the video, or slide the white vertical bar in the frame viewer, to the point where you want to change the focus.
4. Tap the new subject, outlined in yellow, on the screen to change the focus; double-tap to set automatic focus tracking on the subject.

A yellow dot appears under the frame viewer to indicate the focus was changed.

Note: You can also touch and hold the screen to lock the focus at a specific distance from the camera.

5. Repeat the steps above to change focus points throughout the video.

To remove a manual focus change, tap the yellow dot under the frame viewer, then tap  [Alt text: the Trash button] .

6. Tap Done to save your changes.

Tap  [Alt text: the Manual Tracking button] to toggle between Camera's automatic focus tracking and your manually selected focus points.

After you save your changes, you can revert a Cinematic mode video to the original if you don't like your edits. Open the video, tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Revert to Original.

Adjust the depth of field in a Cinematic mode video

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a video you recorded in Cinematic mode, then tap  [Alt text: the Edit button] .
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Depth Control button] at the top of the screen.

A slider appears below the video.

4. Drag the slider left or right to adjust the depth of field effect, then tap Done.

To undo edits after you save, open the video, tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Revert to Original.

Export Cinematic mode videos to your Mac

You can use [AirDrop](#) to transfer Cinematic mode videos—with depth and focus metadata—from your iPhone to your Mac to edit in other apps.

Note: To edit Cinematic mode videos recorded on an iPhone with iOS 16 or later, make sure your Mac is using macOS 13 or later.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open the Cinematic mode video, then tap  [Alt text: the Share button] .
3. Tap Options at the top of the screen, turn on All Photos Data, then tap Done.
4. Tap AirDrop, then tap the device you want to share with (make sure the device you're sharing with has AirDrop turned on).

For information about editing Cinematic mode videos on your Mac using Photos, see [Edit a Cinematic mode video](#).

For information about editing Cinematic mode videos on your Mac using Final Cut Pro, iMovie, or Motion, see the Apple Support article [Edit Cinematic mode video in Final Cut Pro, iMovie, and Motion](#).

Export Cinematic mode videos to an external storage device

You can export Cinematic mode videos directly to an external drive, a memory card, or other storage device.

Note: For photos and videos that have been edited, the unmodified original version will be exported.

1. Connect your iPhone to the storage device using the Lightning or USB-C connector.
2. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
3. Select the video you want to export.
4. Tap  [Alt text: the Share button], then tap Export Unmodified Original.
5. Tap your storage device (below Locations), then tap Save.

Related

[Edit photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[Record videos in Cinematic mode with your iPhone camera](#)

[Undo and revert photo edits in Photos on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Edit Live Photos](#)

Edit Live Photos on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Photos on your iPhone, you can edit and add effects to Live Photos.

In the Photos app, you can edit Live Photos, change the key photo, and add fun effects like Bounce and Loop.

Make Live Photo edits

In addition to the [photo editing tools](#), you can also change a Live Photo's key photo, trim its length, mute the sound, and turn a Live Photo into a still photo.